

Business Transaction Protocol

Version 1.0.9.5

BTP 1.1 Working Draft 05, 9 November 2004

Document identifier:

business_transaction-btp-1.1-spec-wd-05

Location:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/business_transaction/

Editor:

Peter Furniss, Choreology Ltd. <<mailto:peter.furniss@choreology.com>>
(for versions 1.0 and 1.1)

Co-authors:

Sanjay Dalal, BEA Systems (for version 1.0)
Tony Fletcher, Choreology Ltd (for version 1.0)
Alastair Green, Choreology Ltd (for version 1.0)
Bob Haugen, Choreology Ltd. (for version 1.1)
Alex Ceponkus, individual (for versions 1.0 and 1.1)
Bill Pope, individual (for version 1.0)

Abstract:

The Business Transaction Protocol (BTP) is a carrier-neutral protocol to allow coordination of application work between multiple autonomous, cooperating participants. It defines protocol exchanges to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. This consistency may be defined *a priori*: all the work is confirmed or none is (an atomic business transaction or atom); or it can be determined by application intervention in the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive business transaction or cohesion). The protocol is defined in terms of abstract messages schematized in XML. This specification defines communications protocol bindings to SOAP but also allows the carriage of BTP messages over other communication protocols.

BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

Status:

This is working draft 5 of the revision of Committee Specification BTP 1.0 (June 2002), in preparation for BTP 1.1. This draft includes minor corrections following the TC review of working draft 4 – two cells in Table 11, state S1 and colouring of the example xml. This text will be submitted for approval as Committee Draft as BTP 1.1.

Committee members should send comments on this specification to the business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org list. Others should subscribe to and send comments to the business-transaction-comment@lists.oasis-open.org list. To subscribe, send an email message to business-transaction-comment-request@lists.oasis-open.org with the word "subscribe" as the body of the message.

42 For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to
43 implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to
44 the Intellectual Property Rights section of the Business Transactions TC web page
45 (<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transaction/>).

Table of Contents

47	Introduction	8
48	1 Structure of this specification	9
49	2 Conventions and terminology	11
50	2.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style	11
51	2.2 Glossary	11
52	3 Conceptual Model	18
53	3.1 Concepts	18
54	3.1.1 Example Core	18
55	3.1.2 Business transactions	19
56	3.1.3 External Effects	20
57	3.1.4 Two-phase outcome	21
58	3.1.5 Actors and roles	21
59	3.1.6 Superior:Inferior relationship	21
60	3.1.7 Business Transaction Trees	22
61	3.1.8 Atoms and Cohesions	24
62	3.1.9 Participants, Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers	25
63	3.2 Business transaction lifecycle	25
64	3.2.1 Business Transaction creation	25
65	3.2.2 Business Transaction propagation	26
66	3.2.3 Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers)	27
67	3.2.4 "Checking" and context-reply	28
68	3.2.5 Message sequence	29
69	3.2.6 Control of inferiors	33
70	3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set	36
71	3.2.8 Confirm-set of intermediates	40
72	3.3 Optimisations and variations	43
73	3.3.1 Spontaneous prepared	43
74	3.3.2 One-shot	43
75	3.3.3 Resignation	45
76	3.3.4 One-phase confirmation	45
77	3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions	46
78	3.4 Recovery and failure handling	47
79	3.4.1 Types of failure	47
80	3.4.2 Persistent information	47
81	3.4.3 Recovery messages	48
82	3.4.4 Redirection	49
83	3.4.5 Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit	50
84	3.4.6 Contradictions and hazard	50
85	3.5 Relation of BTP to application and Carrier Protocols	52
86	3.6 Other elements	53
87	3.6.1 Identifiers	53
88	3.6.2 Addresses	54

89	3.6.3 Qualifiers	54
90	3.6.4 Lists.....	55
91	4 Actors, Roles and Relationships.....	56
92	4.1 Relationships.....	56
93	4.2 Roles	57
94	4.3 Roles involved in the Outcome Relationships.....	58
95	4.3.1 Superior.....	58
96	4.3.2 Inferior	59
97	4.3.3 Enroller.....	60
98	4.3.4 Participant	60
99	4.3.5 Sub-coordinator	61
100	4.3.6 Sub-composer.....	61
101	4.4 Roles involved in the Control Relationships.....	61
102	4.4.1 Decider.....	61
103	4.4.2 Coordinator	62
104	4.4.3 Composer	62
105	4.4.4 Terminator.....	62
106	4.4.5 Initiator	63
107	4.4.6 Factory	63
108	4.5 Other roles.....	64
109	4.5.1 Redirector	64
110	4.5.2 Status Requestor	64
111	4.6 Summary of relationships.....	65
112	5 Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts	66
113	5.1 Addresses	66
114	5.2 Request/response pairs	67
115	5.3 Compounding messages	67
116	5.4 Extensibility	69
117	5.5 Messages	69
118	5.5.1 Qualifiers.....	69
119	5.6 Messages not restricted to outcome or Control Relationships.	70
120	5.6.1 CONTEXT	70
121	5.6.2 CONTEXT_REPLY	71
122	5.6.3 REQUEST_STATUS	72
123	5.6.4 STATUS.....	73
124	5.6.5 FAULT.....	75
125	5.6.6 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES.....	77
126	5.7 Messages used in the Outcome Relationships.....	77
127	5.7.1 ENROL.....	77
128	5.7.2 ENROLLED.....	78
129	5.7.3 RESIGN	79
130	5.7.4 RESIGNED	80
131	5.7.5 PREPARE.....	80
132	5.7.6 PREPARED	81

133	5.7.7 CONFIRM	82
134	5.7.8 CONFIRMED	83
135	5.7.9 CANCEL	84
136	5.7.10 CANCELLED	84
137	5.7.11 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	85
138	5.7.12 HAZARD	86
139	5.7.13 CONTRADICTION	87
140	5.7.14 SUPERIOR_STATE	88
141	5.7.15 INFERIOR_STATE	89
142	5.7.16 REDIRECT	91
143	5.8 Messages used in Control Relationships	92
144	5.8.1 BEGIN	92
145	5.8.2 BEGUN	93
146	5.8.3 PREPARE_INFERIORS	94
147	5.8.4 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	96
148	5.8.5 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	98
149	5.8.6 CANCEL_TRANSACTION	99
150	5.8.7 CANCEL_INFERIORS	100
151	5.8.8 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	101
152	5.8.9 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	102
153	5.8.10 INFERIOR_STATUSES	103
154	5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages	104
155	5.9.1 CONTEXT & Application Message	104
156	5.9.2 CONTEXT_REPLY & Application Message	105
157	5.9.3 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL	105
158	5.9.4 CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED	106
159	5.9.5 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & Application Message (& PREPARED)	106
160	5.10 Standard qualifiers	107
161	5.10.1 Transaction timelimit	107
162	5.10.2 Inferior timeout	107
163	5.10.3 Minimum inferior timeout	108
164	5.10.4 Inferior name	109
165	5.10.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants	109
166	5.10.6 Expected-time-till-state-change	110
167	6 State Tables	111
168	6.1 Status queries	111
169	6.2 Decision events	111
170	6.3 Disruptions – failure events	112
171	6.4 Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism	112
172	6.5 Meaning of state table events	113
173	6.6 Persistent information	116
174	6.7 Superior state table	119
175	6.8 Inferior state table	124
176	7 Persistent information	130

177	8	XML representation of Message Set	131
178	8.1	Field types	131
179	8.1.1	Addresses	131
180	8.1.2	Qualifiers	132
181	8.1.3	Identifiers	132
182	8.1.4	Message References	132
183	8.2	Messages	132
184	8.2.1	CONTEXT	132
185	8.2.2	CONTEXT_REPLY	132
186	8.2.3	REQUEST_STATUS	133
187	8.2.4	STATUS	133
188	8.2.5	FAULT	133
189	8.2.6	ENROL	134
190	8.2.7	ENROLLED	135
191	8.2.8	RESIGN	135
192	8.2.9	RESIGNED	135
193	8.2.10	PREPARE	135
194	8.2.11	PREPARED	136
195	8.2.12	CONFIRM	136
196	8.2.13	CONFIRMED	136
197	8.2.14	CANCEL	137
198	8.2.15	CANCELLED	137
199	8.2.16	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	137
200	8.2.17	HAZARD	137
201	8.2.18	CONTRADICTION	138
202	8.2.19	SUPERIOR_STATE	138
203	8.2.20	INFERIOR_STATE	138
204	8.2.21	REDIRECT	138
205	8.2.22	BEGIN	139
206	8.2.23	BEGUN	139
207	8.2.24	PREPARE_INFERIORS	139
208	8.2.25	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	140
209	8.2.26	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	140
210	8.2.27	CANCEL_TRANSACTION	140
211	8.2.28	CANCEL_INFERIORS	140
212	8.2.29	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	141
213	8.2.30	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	141
214	8.2.31	INFERIOR_STATUSES	141
215	8.3	Standard qualifiers	142
216	8.3.1	Transaction timelimit	142
217	8.3.2	Inferior timeout	142
218	8.3.3	Minimum inferior timeout	142
219	8.3.4	Inferior name	142
220	8.3.5	Cancel-on-zero-participants	142

221	8.3.6 Expected-time-till-state-change	143
222	8.4 Compounding of Messages	143
223	8.5 XML Schemas	143
224	8.5.1 XML schema for BTP messages	143
225	8.5.2 XML schema for standard qualifiers	143
226	9 Carrier Protocol Bindings	144
227	9.1 Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma	144
228	9.2 Bindings for request/response Carrier Protocols	145
229	9.2.1 Request/response exploitation rules.....	146
230	9.3 SOAP Binding	147
231	9.3.1 Example scenario using SOAP binding.....	149
232	9.4 SOAP + Attachments Binding	150
233	9.4.1 Example using SOAP + Attachments binding	151
234	9.5 11.5 WSDL-friendly one-way binding.....	152
235	10 Conformance.....	154
236	11 References.....	156
237	11.1 Normative	156
238	Appendix A. Acknowledgments	157
239	Appendix B. Revision History	158
240	Appendix C. Notices	159
241	Appendix D. Node State Information Serialisation	160
242	D.1 Abstract Format for Node State Information	160
243	D.2 Informal XML for Node State Information.....	162
244	D.3 XML schema for Node State Information	163
245		

246 Introduction

247 BTP is designed to allow coordination of application work between multiple participants owned or
248 controlled by autonomous organizations. BTP uses a two-phase outcome coordination protocol to
249 ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. BTP permits the consistent outcome
250 to be defined *a priori*: all the work is confirmed or none is (an atomic business transaction or
251 atom) or it can be determined by application intervention into the selection of the work to be
252 confirmed (a cohesive business transaction or cohesion).

253 BTP's ability to coordinate between services offered by autonomous organizations makes it
254 ideally suited for use in a Web Services environment. For this reason this specification defines
255 communications protocol bindings which target the emerging Web Services arena, while
256 preserving the capacity to carry BTP messages over other communication protocols. Protocol
257 message structure and content constraints are schematized in XML, and message content is
258 encoded in XML instances.

259 BTP allows great flexibility in the implementation of business transaction participants. Such
260 participants enable the consistent reversal of the effects of atoms. For example, BTP participants
261 may use recorded before- or after-images, or compensation operations to provide the "roll-
262 forward, roll-back" capacity which enables their subordination to the overall outcome of an atomic
263 business transaction.

264 BTP is an interoperation protocol which defines the roles which software agents (actors) may
265 occupy, the messages that pass between such actors, and the obligations upon and
266 commitments made by actors-in-roles. It does not define the programming interfaces to be used
267 by application programmers to stimulate message flow or associated state changes.

268 BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation
269 choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other
270 standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

271 The OASIS Business Transaction Technical Committee began its work at an inaugural meeting in
272 San Jose, Calif. on 13 March 2001, and version 1.0 of this specification was endorsed as a
273 Committee Specification by a unanimous vote on 16th May 2002. The TC revised the specification
274 in the light of feedback and implementation experience to form this present specification of BTP
275 1.1.

276 The BT Technical Committee has consciously avoided specifying the integration of BTP with
277 security standards or technology. It is assumed that all BTP actors are within a trust domain or
278 some separate specification defines the integration with security mechanisms.

1 Structure of this specification

281 This specification document includes, in Part 1, an explanation and description of the conceptual
282 model of BTP, and, in Part 2, a fully normative specification of the protocol.

283 The use and definition of terms in the model can be regarded as authoritative but should not be
284 taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. In case of (unintended) disagreement between
285 the parts, Part 2 takes precedence over Part 1.

286 Part 1 contains:

- 287 • This structure description;
- 288 • A description of the typographic and other conventions used in the document;
- 289 • A glossary that provides succinct definitions of terms used in the document;
- 290 • Conceptual Model.

291 Part 2 contains the following sections:

- 292 • Actors, roles and relationships: defines the model entities used in the specification, their
293 relationships to each other and indicates the correspondence of these to real implementation
294 constructs. This section also lists which messages are sent and received for each role.
- 295 • Abstract message set: defines a set of abstract messages that are exchanged between
296 software agents performing the various roles to create, progress and complete the
297 relationships between those roles. For each abstract message the parameters are defined
298 and the associated “contract” is stated. The contract defines the meaning of the message in
299 terms of what the receiver can infer of the sender’s state and the intended effect on the
300 receiver. This section does not itself specify a particular encoding or representation of the
301 messages nor a single mechanism for communicating the messages.
- 302 • State tables: specifies the state transitions for the Superior and Inferior roles, detailing when
303 particular messages may be sent and when internal decisions may be made that affect the
304 state.
- 305 • XML representation: defines an XML representation of the message set. Other
306 representations of the message set, or parts of it are possible; these may or may not be
307 suitable for interoperation between heterogeneous implementations. This section uses an
308 informal syntax to the structure of the BTP messages and references the XML schemas
309 which are separate documents. These separate XML documents should be considered a
310 normative part of this specification, as if they were part of this document. They are presented
311 as separate documents to avoid possible inconsistencies due to formatting and copying.
- 312 • Carrier protocol bindings: defines a “carrier binding proforma” that details the information
313 required to specify the mapping to a particular carrier protocol such that independent
314 implementations can interoperate. The proforma requires an identification for the binding, the
315 nature of the addressing information used with the binding, how the messages are
316 represented and encoded and how they are carried (e.g. which carrier protocol messages or
317 fields they are in) and may include other requirements.
- 318 • Using the carrier protocol proforma, this section fully specifies bindings to SOAP 1.1, using
319 the XML representation of the abstract message set. This section references separate XML
320 documents containing WSDL definitions. These documents should be considered integral,
321 but non-normative parts of this specification.
- 322 • Conformance definitions: defines combinations of facilities (expressed as roles) that an
323 implementation can declare it supports.

324 Following Part 2 there are several appendices. The only technical appendix is the informational
325 appendix D which defines a format for the serialised state information of a BTP node. This is a
326 first step towards enabling the migration of the transaction coordination roles, which is an
327 important feature for scalable transaction systems.
328

329 2 Conventions and terminology

330 2.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style

331 The initial letters of words in terms which are defined (at least in their substantive or infinitive
332 form) in the Glossary are capitalized whenever the term used with that exact meaning, thus:

- 333 • Cancel
- 334 • Participant
- 335 • Application Message

336 The first occurrence of a word defined in the Glossary is given in bold, thus:

337 Coordinator

338 Such words may be given in bold in other contexts (for example, in section headings or captions)
339 to emphasize their status as formally defined terms.

340 The names of abstract BTP protocol messages are given in upper-case throughout:

- 341 • BEGIN
- 342 • CONTEXT
- 343 • RESIGN

344 The values of elements within a BTP protocol message are indicated thus:

- 345 • BEGIN/atom

346 BTP protocol messages that are related semantically are joined by an ampersand:

- 347 • BEGIN/atom & CONTEXT

348 BTP protocol messages that are transmitted together in a compound are joined by a + sign:

- 349 • ENROL + VOTE

350 XML schemata and instances are given in Courier and are shaded:

351 `<btp:begin> ... </btp:begin>`

352 The key words **must**, **must not**, **required**, **shall**, **shall not**, **should**, **should not**, **recommended**,
353 **may**, and **optional** in lowercase bold in this document are to be interpreted as described in
354 [RFC2119].

355 2.2 Glossary

356 Actor

357 An entity that executes procedures, a software agent. (See also BTP Actor)

358 Address

359 An identifier for an endpoint.

360 Application

361 An Actor, which uses the Business Transaction Protocol (in the context of this
362 specification).

363 Also, a group of such Actors, which may be distributed, that perform a common purpose.

364 (When used in phrases such as “determined by the Application”, it is not relevant to BTP
365 whether this is determined by the owner of a single system or is explicitly part of the

366 Contract that defines the distributed collaborative application. When it is necessary to
367 distinguish the responsibilities of a single party, the term "Application Element" is used.)

368 **Application Element**

369 An Actor that communicates, using Application Protocols, with other Application
370 Elements, as part of an overall distributed application. A single system may contain more
371 than one Application Element.

372 **Application Message**

373 A message produced by an Application Element and consumed by an Application
374 Element.

375 **Application Operation**

376 An operation, which is started when an Application Message arrives.

377 **Appropriate**

378 In accordance with a pertinent contract or specification.

379 **Atom**

380 A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a BTP Node (which may have only
381 one member), all of which will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous
382 outcome. That is, they will be issued instructions to all Confirm or all Cancel.

383 **Atomic Business Transaction**

384 A complete Business Transaction that follows the atom rules for every BTP Node in the
385 Transaction Tree over space and time, so that all the participants in the transaction will
386 receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is, they will be
387 issued instructions to all Confirm or all Cancel.

388 **Become Prepared**

389 Ensure that of a set of procedures is capable of being successfully instructed to Cancel
390 or to Confirm.

391 **BTP Actor**

392 A software entity, or agent, that is able to take part in Business Transaction Protocol
393 exchanges i.e. that sends or receives BTP messages. A BTP Actor may be capable of
394 only playing a single Role, or of playing several different roles concurrently and / or
395 sequentially. A BTP Actor may be involved in one, or more, transactions, concurrently
396 and / or sequentially.

397 **BTP Address**

398 A compound address consisting of three parts. The first part, the "binding name",
399 identifies the binding to a particular Carrier Protocol – some bindings are specified in this
400 document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the
401 "binding address", is meaningful to the Carrier Protocol itself, which will use it for the
402 communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part,
403 "additional information", is not used or understood by the Carrier Protocol. The
404 "additional information" may be a structured value.

405 **BTP Element**

406 A BTP Actor that supports an Application Element (or elements) but is not itself
407 concerned with Application Messages or semantics.

408 **(Business) Application Protocol**

409 The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences used to effect a change in
410 the state of a business relationship.

411 **(Business) Application System**

412 A system that contains one or more business applications, and resources such as volatile
413 and persistent storage for business state information. It may also contain other things
414 such as an operating system and BTP Elements.

415 **Business relationship**

416 A business relationship is any distributed state held by the parties, which is subject to
417 contractual constraints agreed by those parties.

418 **Business Transaction**

419 A set of state changes that occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by
420 some set of parties, and these changes are related in some application defined manner.
421 A Business Transaction is subject to, and a part of, a business relationship. (BTP
422 assumes that the parties involved in a Business Transaction have distinct and
423 autonomous Application Systems, which do not require knowledge of each others'
424 implementation or internal state representations. Access to such loosely coupled
425 systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.)

426 **Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)**

427 The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences defined in this
428 specification. Its purpose is to provide the interactions (or signalling) required to
429 coordinate the effects of Application Protocol to achieve a Business Transaction.

430 **Cancel**

431 Process a counter effect for the current effect of a set of procedures. There are a
432 number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

433 **Carrier Protocol**

434 A protocol, which defines how the transmission of BTP messages occur.

435 **Client**

436 An Actor, which sends Application Messages to services.

437 **Cohesion**

438 A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a BTP Node that may receive
439 instructions that may result in different outcomes for each participant. That is they will be
440 issued instructions to Confirm or Cancel according to the application logic. Participants
441 may resign or be instructed to Cancel until the Confirm set is fixed. Once the Confirm set
442 for a Cohesion is fixed, then all participants in the Confirm set are treated atomically.
443 That is they will all be instructed to Confirm unless one, or more, Cancel in which case all
444 will be instructed to Cancel. All participants not in the Confirm set will be instructed to
445 Cancel.

446 **Cohesive Business Transaction**

447 A complete Business Transaction for which at least one BTP Node over space and time
448 follows the cohesion rules. The other BTP Nodes in the Transaction Tree of a Cohesive
449 Business Transaction may follow either the cohesion rules or the atom rules.

450 **Confirm**

451 Ensure that the effect of a set of procedures is completed. There are a number of
452 different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

453 **Contract**

454 Any rule, agreement or promise which constrains an Actor's behaviour and is known to
455 any other Actor, and upon which any other knowing Actor may rely.

456 **Control Relationship**

457 The Application Element:BTP Element relationships that create the nodes of the
458 Transaction Tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

459 **Coordinator**
460 A BTP Actor, which is the top BTP node of a transaction and decides the outcome of its
461 immediate branches according to the Atom rules defined in this specification. It has a
462 lifetime, which is coincident with that of the Atom. A coordinator can issue instructions to
463 prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A
464 coordinator is identified by its transaction-identifier. A coordinator must also have a BTP
465 Address to which participants can send BTP messages.

466 **Counter-effect**
467 An appropriate effect intended to counteract a Provisional Effect.

468 **Decider**
469 The top BTP Node of a Transaction Tree, a composer or a coordinator (so called
470 because the Terminator can only request confirmation – the Decider makes the final
471 determination). The term can always be interpreted as “Composer or Coordinator”.
472 It is the Role at the other end of a Control Relationship to a Terminator.

473 **Delivery Parameter**
474 A parameter of an abstract message that is concerned with the transmission of the
475 message to its target or the transmission of an immediate reply.. Distinguished from
476 Payload Parameter.

477 **Endpoint**
478 A sender or receiver.

479 **Enroller**
480 The BTP Actor Role that informs a superior of the existence of an inferior.

481 **Factory**
482 The BTP Actor Role that creates transaction contexts and deciders.

483 **Final Effect**
484 An appropriate effect intended to complete and finalise a Provisional Effect

485 **Inferior**
486 The end of a BTP Node to BTP Node relationship governed by the outcome protocol that
487 is topologically further from the top of the Transaction Tree.

488 **Inferior-Address**
489 The address used to communicate with an Actor playing the Role of an Inferior.

490 **Inferior-identifier**
491 A globally unambiguous identification of a particular Inferior within a single transaction
492 (represented as an URI or equivalent).

493 **Initiator**
494 The BTP Actor Role (an Application Element) that starts a transaction.

495 **Intermediate**
496 A BTP Node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to
497 interposed.

498 **Interposed**

499 A BTP Node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to
500 intermediate.

501 **Message**

502 A datum, which is produced and then consumed.

503 **Node**

504 BTP Node, Business Transaction Tree Node, Transaction Tree Node: A logical entity that
505 is associated with a single transaction. A BTP Node is a composer, a coordinator, a sub-
506 coordinator, a sub-composer, or a participant.

507 Network Node: A computer system or program that hosts one or more BTP Actors (and
508 thus, often, BTP Nodes)

509 **Operation**

510 A procedure, which is started by a receiver when a message arrives at it.

511 **Outcome**

512 A decision to either Cancel or Confirm.

513 **Outcome Relationship**

514 The Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP Actors within the Transaction Tree)
515 and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it.

516 **Participant**

517 A participant is part of an Application System that also contains one or more applications,
518 which manipulate resources. It is a Role of a BTP Actor that is (or is equivalent to) a set
519 of procedures, which is capable of receiving instructions from another BTP Actor to
520 prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These signals are used by the application(s) to determine
521 whether to effect (Confirm) or counter effect (Cancel) the results of Application
522 Operations. A participant must also have a BTP Address, to which these instructions will
523 be delivered, in the form of BTP messages. A participant is identified by an inferior-
524 identifier.

525 **Payload Parameter**

526 A parameter of an abstract message that is will be received and processed or retained by
527 the receiving BTP Actor. The various identifier parameters are considered Payload
528 Parameters . Distinguished from Delivery Parameter.

529 **Peer**

530 The other party in a two-party relationship, as in Superior to Inferior, or Sender to
531 Receiver.

532 **Provisional Effect**

533 The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by
534 an Actor, which are subject to later completion or Counter-effecting. The Provisional
535 Effect may or may not be observable by other Actors.

536 **Receiver**

537 The consumer of a message.

538 **Responders-identifier**

539 An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a
540 superior-identifier, or an inferior-identifier according to the nature of the Role in a BTP
541 Actor that is responding to a received message.

542 **Role**

543 The participation of a software agent in a particular relationship in a particular Business
544 Transaction. The software agent performing a Role is termed an Actor.

545 **Sender**

546 The producer of a message.

547 **Service**

548 An Actor (an Application Element), which on receipt of Application Messages, may start
549 an Appropriate Application Operation. For example, a process that advertises an
550 interface allowing defined RPCs (remote procedure calls) to be invoked by a remote
551 client.

552 **Status Requestor**

553 The BTP Actor Role that requests the status of another BTP Actor.

554 **Sub-composer**

555 An Actor, which is not the top BTP Node of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its
556 superior and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the cohesive
557 rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the
558 Cohesion. A sub-composer can issue instructions to prepare, Cancel and Confirm on
559 individual branches. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-
560 composer must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP
561 messages.

562 **Sub-coordinator**

563 An Actor, which is not the top BTP Node of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its
564 superior and propagates the outcome to its immediate branches according to the Atom
565 rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of this
566 Atom. A sub-coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These
567 instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-coordinator must also have at least
568 one BTP Address to which lower BTP Nodes can send BTP messages.

569 **Superior**

570 The BTP Role that will accept enrolments of Inferiors and subsequently inform the Inferior
571 of the Outcome applicable to it.

572 A Superior will be one of Composer, Coordinator, Sub-composer, or Sub-coordinator.

573 A Superior is considered to be a Superior even if it currently has no enrolled Inferiors.

574 **Superior-address**

575 The set of BTP addresses used to communicate with an Actor playing the Role of a
576 Superior.

577 **Superior-identifier**

578 A globally unambiguous identifier of a particular Superior within a particular transaction
579 (represented as an URI or equivalent).

580 **Target-identifier**

581 An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a
582 superior-identifier, or an inferior identifier according to the nature of the Role in a BTP
583 Actor that receives this identifier.

584 **Terminator**

585 A BTP Role performed by an Application Element communicating with a Decider to
586 control the completion of the Business Transaction. Frequently will be identical to the
587 Initiator, but distinguished because the control of the Business Transaction can be
588 passed between Application Elements.

589 **Transaction**

590 A complete unit of work as defined by an application. A transaction starts when a part of
591 the distributed transaction first initiates some work that is to be a part of a new
592 transaction. The Transaction Tree may grow and shrink over time and (logical) space. A
593 transaction completes when all the participants in a transaction have completed (that is
594 have replied to their Confirm or Cancel instruction).

595 **Transaction Tree**

596 A pattern of BTP Nodes that provides the coordination of a distributed application
597 transaction. There is single top BTP Node (a Decider) that interacts with the initiating
598 application (which is a part of a distributed application). The Decider BTP Node has one,
599 or more Outcome Relationships with other BTP Nodes (sub-composer, sub-coordinator,
600 or participant BTP Nodes). Any intermediate BTP Nodes (Sub-composer or Sub-
601 coordinator nodes) have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior,
602 and one, or more, relationships down the tree in which they act as Superior. Participants
603 are leaves of the tree. That is they have exactly one relationship up the tree in which
604 they act as Inferior and no down tree relationships.

605 **Transaction-identifier**

606 A globally unambiguous identifier for a particular a Decider (represented as an URI or
607 equivalent). A Decider is the top BTP Node of the transaction and thus this identifier also
608 unambiguously identifies the transaction. Often identical to the Superior-identifier of the
609 Decider in its Role as Superior, though the protocol does not require this.

610 **Transmission**

611 The passage of a message from a sender to a receiver.

612

613 3 Conceptual Model

614 This section introduces the concepts of BTP. Its use and definition of terms can be regarded as
615 authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. Part 2 of the
616 specification is fully normative and in case of disagreement takes precedence over statements or
617 examples in this section.

618 3.1 Concepts

619 BTP is designed to make minimal assumptions about the implementation structure and the
620 properties of the **Carrier Protocols**. This allows BTP to be bound to more than one Carrier
621 Protocol. BTP implementations built in quite different ways should be able to interoperate if they
622 are bound to the same Carrier Protocol. This flexibility requires that much of the text is abstract
623 and may be difficult to visualise in the absence of a particular implementation pattern or Carrier
624 Protocol. To aid understanding some possible implementation examples are presented in the
625 following text.

626 3.1.1 Example Core

627 An advanced manufacturing company (*Manufacturer A*) orders the parts and services it needs
628 on-line. It has existing relationships with parts suppliers and providers of services such as
629 shipping and insurance. All of the communications between these organizations is via XML
630 messages. The interactions of these business transactions include:

- 631 • *Manufacturer A's* production scheduling system sends an Order message to a
632 *Supplier*.
- 633 • The *Supplier's* order processing system sends back an order confirmation with the
634 details of the order.
- 635 • *Manufacturer A* orders delivery from a *Shipper* for the ordered parts.
- 636 • The *Shipper* evaluates the request and based on its truck schedule it sends back a
637 positive or negative reply.
- 638 • Some shipments need to be insured based on their value, where they are shipped
639 from, and method of transportation. *Manufacturer A* sends an Order message to an
640 *Insurer* when this is necessary.
- 641 • The *Insurer* responds with a bid or a no-bid response.

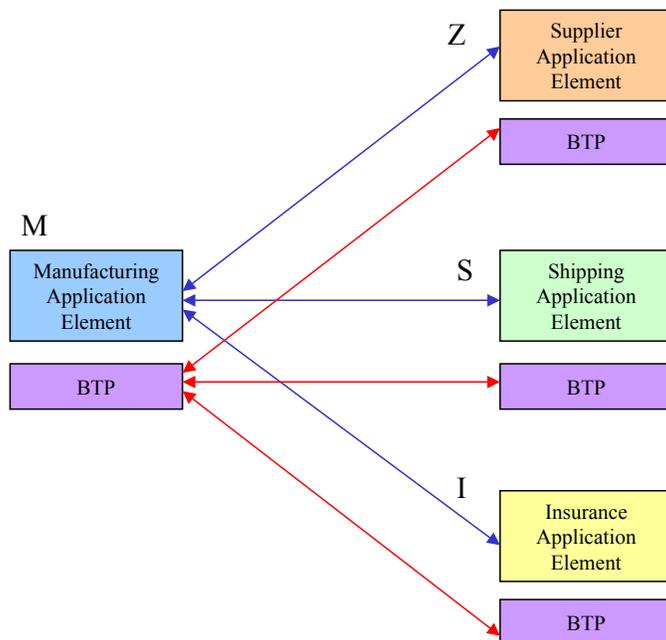
642 Problems have arisen with some of these interactions.

- 643 • *Manufacturer A* had ordered parts from a supplier and contacted shipper M about
644 delivering the goods. Shipper M was busy and agreed to the contract, but only for a
645 scheduled delivery the day after the parts were needed. By the time this was
646 addressed, it was too late to schedule alternate shipping.
- 647 • There were communications problems with supplier Z that resulted in an order not
648 being confirmed. The shipper arrived to pick up the order and supplier Z knew
649 nothing about it.
- 650 • Goods have been shipped without insurance when company policy dictated that
651 insurance was required.

652 These problems occur because of the unreliable nature of the Internet and the lack of visibility a
653 company has into the workings and state of an outside organization. By using BTP in support of
654 this supply application, these problems can be ameliorated.

655 BTP is a protocol, that is, a set of specific messages that get exchanged between computer
656 systems supporting an application, with rules about the meaning and use of the messages. The

657 computer systems will also exchange other, application-specific messages. Thus, within the
 658 example, the Manufacturer's system and the Supplier's system (say), will exchange application
 659 messages detailing what the goods are, how many, what price and will also exchange BTP
 660 messages. The parts of the application in both systems that handle these different sets of
 661 messages can be distinguished, as in Figure 1. In each BTP-using party there is an **Application**
 662 **Element** and a **BTP Element**. The Application Elements exchange the order information and
 663 cause the associated business functions to be performed. The BTP Elements, which send and
 664 receive the BTP messages, perform specific roles in the protocol. These BTP Elements assist
 665 the application in getting the work of the application done. The Application Element, as
 666 understood by this model, may include supporting infrastructure elements, such as containers or
 667 interceptors, as well as application-specific code.



668
 669 *Figure 1 – Manufacturer Example*

670 3.1.2 Business transactions

671 A **Business Transaction** can be defined as a consistent change in the state of a business
 672 relationship between two or more **parties**. A business relationship is any distributed state held by
 673 the parties which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties. For example, a
 674 master purchasing agreement, which permits the placing of orders for components by known
 675 buying organizations, allows a buyer and a seller to exchange meaningful information about the
 676 creation and processing of an order. Such agreements may include the specification of shared or
 677 canonical data formats, of the messages that carry those formats and their permitted sequences,
 678 all of which are needed for an automated implementation of an agreement. This definition of a
 679 business relationship is deliberately silent on the nature of the “business” transacted between the
 680 parties: it might be trading for profit, verification of authorizations for expenditure or loans,
 681 consistent publication (replication) of government ordinances to multiple sites, or any other
 682 computerized interaction where the parties require high confidence of consistent delivery or
 683 processing of data.

684 In each party or site where business relationship state resides an **Application System** must exist
 685 which can maintain that state and communicate it as needed to other parties. The **Business**
 686 **Transaction Protocol** (BTP) assists the Application Systems of the various parties to bring about
 687 consistent and coordinated changes in the relationship as viewed from each party. BTP assumes
 688 that for a given Business Transaction, state changes occur, or are desired, in computer systems

689 controlled by some set of parties, and that these changes are related in some application-defined
 690 manner. BTP assumes that the parties involved in a Business Transaction have distinct and
 691 autonomous Application Systems, which do not require knowledge of each others'
 692 implementation or internal state representations. Access to such loosely coupled Application
 693 Systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.

694 The state changes that BTP is concerned with are only those affecting the immediate business
 695 relationship. Although these externally visible changes will typically correspond to internal state
 696 changes of the parties, use of BTP does not itself imply any constraints or requirements on the
 697 internal state.¹

698 3.1.3 External Effects

699 BTP coordinates the state changes caused by the exchange of **Application Messages**. These
 700 state changes are part of the **Contract** between BTP-using parties. In the manufacturing
 701 example, an interaction between the manufacturer and the supplier might involve the supplier
 702 receiving the order (an Application Message), checking to ensure that it had enough product on
 703 hand, reserving the product in the manufacturer's name and replying. When the manufacturer
 704 agrees to the purchase (assuming the shipping and insurance are also reserved), BTP messages
 705 are sent to confirm the purchase. In this case, the supplier is offering a **BTP-enabled service** –
 706 the Application Element and its supporting BTP Elements together offer this service.

707 In general, to be able to satisfy such contracts a BTP-enabled **service** must support in some
 708 manner provisional or tentative state changes (the transaction's **Provisional Effect**) and
 709 completion either through confirmation (**Final Effect**) or cancellation (**Counter-effect**). The
 710 meaning of provisional, final, and Counter-effect are specific to the application and to the
 711 implementation of the application. In the example, the reservation of the order is the Provisional
 712 Effect, the completion of the purchase is the Final Effect.

713 Some of the implementation approaches are shown in Table 1. From the perspective of BTP and
 714 the initiator application, all these are considered equivalent. Outside of BTP the underlying
 715 business relationship (or Contract) between the parties can constrain the degree to which the
 716 effects are visible.

717 **Table 1 Some alternatives for Provisional, Final and Counter-Effects**

Provisional Effect	Final Effect	Counter effect	Comment
Store intended changes without performing them	Perform the changes	Delete the stored changes, unperformed	Provisional Effect may include checking for validity
Perform the changes, making them visible; store information to undo the changes	Delete undo information	Perform undo action	One form of compensation approach
Store original state, prevent outside access, perform changes	Allow access	Restore original state; allow access	A typical database approach
Perform the changes, marked or typed as provisional, making them visible	Mark or transform as final	Delete or mark/transform as cancelled	E.g. quote-to-order cycle

¹ Although a Business Transaction is defined as concerning a business relationship, the facilities of BTP make it suitable for other environments where loosely coupled systems require coordination and consistency.

718 These alternatives are not the only ones – they can be combined or varied. The visible state of
719 the application information prior to confirmation or cancellation may be different from both the
720 original state and the final state.

721 Especially in the compensation approach, if the changes are cancelled, the Counter-effect may
722 be a precise inversion or removal of provisional changes, or it may be the processing of
723 operations that in some way compensate for, make good, alleviate or supplement their effect.
724 There may be side-effects of various kinds from a Counter-effected operation – such as levying of
725 cancellation charges or the record of the operation may be visible, but marked as cancelled. The
726 possibility of these side-effects is considered to be part of the overarching Contract.

727 3.1.4 Two-phase outcome

728 The BTP protocol coordinates the transitions into and out of the event states described above by
729 sending messages between the transaction parties. This involves a two-phase exchange. First
730 the Application Elements exchange messages that determine the characteristics and cause the
731 performance of the Provisional Effect; then a separate message, to the BTP Element, asking for
732 the performance of the final or the counter effect.

733 In general, the Application Elements in the systems involved having first communicated the
734 Application Messages, each system that has to make changes in its own state:

- 735 • determines whether it is able achieve its Provisional Effect and then ensure it will be able
736 either to **Cancel** (Counter-effect) its operation or to **Confirm** (give Final Effect to) its
737 operation, whichever is subsequently instructed, and
- 738 • reports its ability to Confirm-or-cancel (its preparedness) to a central coordinating entity.

739 And, after receiving these reports, the coordinating entity:

- 740 • determines which of the systems should be instructed to Confirm and which should be
741 instructed to Cancel
- 742 • informs each system whether it should Confirm or Cancel (the “outcome”).by sending a
743 message to its BTP Element

744 When there is more than one system that has to make changes, such a two-phase exchange
745 mediated by a coordinator is required in order to achieve a consistent outcome for a set of
746 operations. The two phases of the BTP protocol ensure that either the entire attempted
747 transaction is abandoned or a consistent set of participants is confirmed.

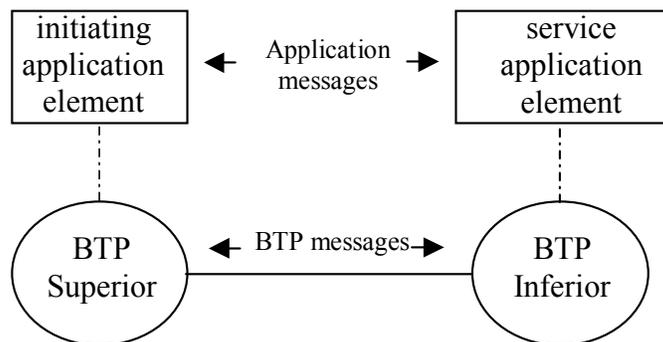
748 3.1.5 Actors and roles

749 BTP centres on the bilateral relationship between the computer systems of the coordinating entity
750 and those of one of the parties in the overall Business Transaction. For each bilateral relationship
751 in a Business Transaction, a software agent within the coordinating entity’s systems plays the
752 BTP Role of Superior and a software agent within the systems of the party play the BTP Role of
753 Inferior. The concept “**Role**” refers strictly to the participation in a particular relationship in a
754 particular Business Transaction. The software agent performing a Role is termed an **Actor**. An
755 Actor is distinguished from other Actors by being distinguishably addressable. The same Actor
756 may perform multiple roles in the same Business Transaction (including the case where a
757 Superior is also an Inferior), and may also perform the same or different roles in multiple
758 Business Transactions, either concurrently or consecutively.

759 3.1.6 Superior:Inferior relationship

760 A basic case of a single Superior:Inferior relationship, including the association with Application
761 Elements, is illustrated in Figure 2. In many cases, including the manufacturer supply example,
762 the Application Element associated with the superior will directly initiate the application
763 exchanges – as does the manufacturer’s application client to the supplier’s server, for example –
764 but this is not invariably the case. It is possible that the first direct communication between the

765 Application Elements is from one associated with an Inferior to the one associated with the
 766 Superior – for example, with an application that requested quotes by advertising the identity and
 767 location of the Superior along with invitation to quote; incoming quotes would be the first direct
 768 Application Message exchanged. But in all cases the topmost Application Element in a tree or
 769 subtree will be aware of the Business Transaction first. How the identity of the transaction and the
 770 address of the BTP Superior are communicated to the secondary Application Element is a matter
 771 for the **Application Protocol** and not strictly part of BTP, although it will commonly be done by
 772 associating a BTP CONTEXT message with Application Messages..



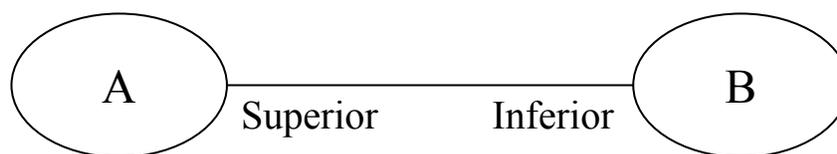
773

774 *Figure 2 Basic Superior:Inferior relationship for BTP*

775 An Inferior is associated with some set of application activities that create effects within the party,
 776 for a given Business Transaction. As stated above, commonly, though not invariably, this
 777 application activity within the party will be a result of some operation invocations from elsewhere
 778 (shown as the “initiating Application Element” in Figure 2), associated with the Superior to an
 779 Application Element associated with the Inferior (shown as “Service Application Element”). This
 780 second Application Element determines what activities the Inferior is responsible for, and then the
 781 Inferior is responsible for reporting to the Superior whether the associated operations’ Provisional
 782 Effect can be confirmed/cancelled – this is called “becoming prepared”, because the Inferior has
 783 to remain prepared to receive whichever order eventually arrives (subject to various exceptions
 784 and exclusions, detailed below).

785 3.1.7 Business Transaction Trees

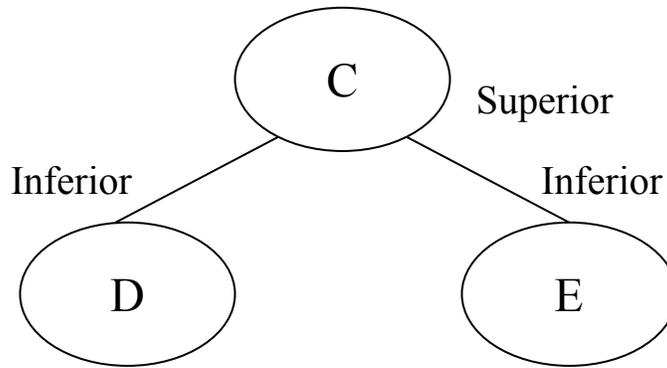
786 There are many patterns in which the service provider participants involved in a Business
 787 Transaction may be arranged in respect of the two-phase exchange and the determination of
 788 which are eventually confirmed. The simplest is shown in Figure 3 involving only two parties –
 789 one (B) making itself subject to the decision of Confirm-or-Cancel made by the other (A). This
 790 basic bilateral relationship, in which one side makes itself inferior to the other, is the building
 791 block used in all Business Transaction patterns. In this simplest case, the “coordination” by the
 792 superior, A, is just that A can be sure whether the operations at the inferior, B were eventually
 793 cancelled or confirmed.



794

795 *Figure 3 Simple two-party Business Transaction*

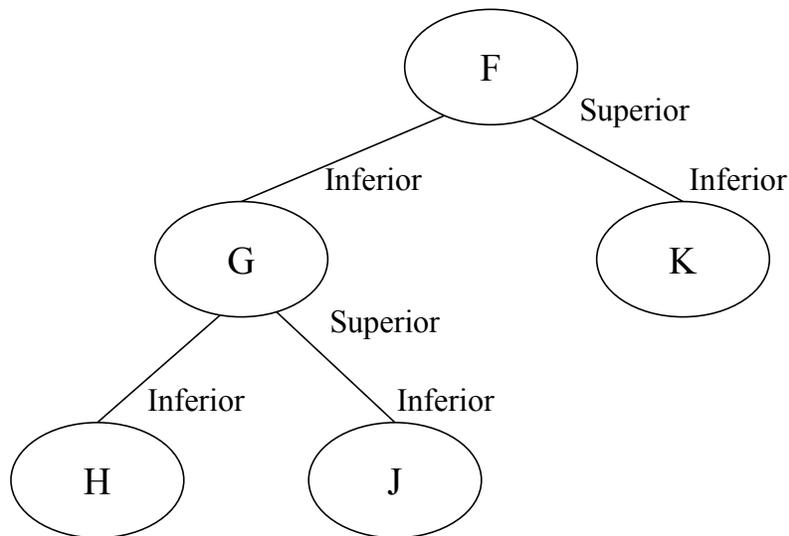
796 In the next simplest case, as in Figure 4, a bilateral, Superior:Inferior relationship appears twice,
 797 with two Inferiors, D and E, both making themselves inferior to a single Superior, C. From the
 798 perspective of either D or E, they are in the same position as B in the previous case –they are
 799 unaware of and unaffected (directly) by each other. It is only within C that there is any linkage
 800 between the Confirm-or-Cancel outcomes that apply to D and E.



801

802 *Figure 4 Business Transaction with two inferiors*

803 The same Superior:Inferior relationship is used in Business Transaction Trees that are both
 804 “wider” – with more Inferiors reporting their preparedness to be Confirm-or-canceled to a single
 805 Superior – and “deeper”. In a “deeper” tree, as in Figure 5, an entity (G) that is Superior to one or
 806 more Inferiors (H, J), is itself Inferior to another entity (F) – it is said to be **interposed** or is an
 807 **Intermediate** (either term can be used). In this case, G will collect the information on
 808 preparedness of its Inferiors before passing on its own report to its Superior, F, and awaiting the
 809 outcome as advised by F.



810

811 *Figure 5 Business Transaction with an Intermediate (interposition)*

812 A Business Transaction Tree, made up of these bilateral Superior:Inferior relationships can, in
 813 theory, be arbitrarily “wide” or “deep” – there are no fixed limits to how many Inferiors a single
 814 Superior can have, or how many levels of intermediates there are between the top-most Superior
 815 (that is Inferior to none) and the bottom-most leaf Inferior. The actual creation of the tree depends
 816 on the behaviour and requirements of the application. Given the (potentially) inter-organisational
 817 nature of Business Transactions, there may be no overall design or control of the structure of the
 818 tree.

819 Each Inferior has only one Superior. However, a single Superior may (and commonly does) have
 820 multiple relationships with Inferiors. Multiple inferiors does not necessarily imply multiple parties;
 821 one party may control several participants in that are Inferiors of the same Superior.

822 3.1.8 Atoms and Cohesions

823 As described in the previous section, the Superior receives reports from its Inferiors as to whether
824 they are prepared. It gathers these reports in order to ascertain which Inferiors should be
825 cancelled and which confirmed - those that cannot prepare will have already cancelled
826 themselves. This determined, directly or indirectly, by the Application Element responsible of the
827 creation and control of the Superior, which determines the nature of the Superior. There are two
828 dimensions of variation in the Superior:

- 829 • Is it an Inferior to another Superior?
- 830 • Does it treat its own Inferiors atomically or cohesively?

831 The distinction between atomic and cohesive behaviour is whether the Superior will choose or
832 allow some Inferiors to Cancel while others Confirm – this is not allowed for atomic behaviour, in
833 which all must Confirm or all must Cancel, but is allowed for cohesive behaviour.

834 The possible cases for a Superior, given these two dimensions of variation, are:

- 835 a) the Application Element initiated the Business Transaction (causing the creation of the
836 Superior), and instructed that all Inferiors of the Superior should Confirm or all should
837 Cancel; the Superior is an **Atom Coordinator**;
- 838 b) the Application Element initiated the Business Transaction, but deferred the choice of
839 which Inferiors should Confirm until later, allowing it (the Application Element) to choose
840 some subset to be confirmed, others to Cancel; the Superior is a **Cohesion Composer**;
- 841 c) the Application Element was itself involved in an existing Business Transaction, and the
842 Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this Application Element
843 instructed that all Inferiors of this Superior should Confirm, but only if confirmation is
844 instructed from above or all should Cancel; the Superior is an (atomic) **Sub-coordinator**;
- 845 d) the Application Element was itself involved in an existing Business Transaction, and the
846 Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this Application Element
847 deferred the choice of which Inferiors should be candidates to Confirm until later, allowing
848 it (the Application Element) to choose some subset to be confirmed, given that
849 confirmation is instructed from above, others to Cancel; the Superior is a (cohesive) **Sub-**
850 **composer**.

851 In the atomic case, the two-phase outcome exchange means a Superior acting as an atomic
852 Coordinator or sub-coordinator will treat any Inferior which cannot prepare to Cancel/Confirm as
853 having veto power, causing the Superior to instruct all its Inferiors to Cancel. A Business
854 Transaction whose topmost Superior is atomic is an **Atomic Business Transaction**, or **Atom** –
855 the superior is the Atom Coordinator.

856 In the cohesion case, with the Superior acting as a cohesive Composer or Sub-Composer, the
857 controlling Application Element will determine the implications of an Inferior's failure to be
858 prepared to Confirm-or-Cancel; the Application Element may Cancel some or all other Inferiors,
859 do other application work, which may involve new Inferiors or may just accept the cancellation of
860 that one Inferior and carry on. A Business Transaction whose topmost Superior is cohesive is a
861 **Cohesive Business Transaction**, or **Cohesion** – the Superior is the Cohesion Composer.

862 For a Cohesion, the set of Inferiors that eventually Confirm is called the **Confirm-set**. The term is
863 also used to mean the set of Inferiors that have been chosen to (potentially) Confirm before the
864 final outcome is decided – if the Cohesion is eventually cancelled, then Confirm-set cancels. (See
865 section "Evolution of Confirm-set"). The Confirm-set of an Atom is all of the Inferiors.

866 If the Superior is itself an Inferior, its own action of becoming prepared, and reporting this to its
867 own Superior will depend on the receipt of prepared reports from its Inferiors. If it is atomic (i.e. is
868 a sub-coordinator), it will only **Become Prepared** if all Inferiors reported preparedness to it; if it is
869 cohesive (i.e. is a sub-composer), the controlling Application Element will determine whether the
870 set of Inferiors that have reported as prepared is sufficient.

871 If the Superior is not an Inferior, the determination of when, if and, for a Cohesion, what it should
 872 Confirm depends on the controlling application. This “top-most” Superior has a different
 873 relationship to the controlling application to that of an Inferior to its Superior: an Inferior reports
 874 that it is prepared to the Superior, which instructs it whether to Cancel or to Confirm; the top-most
 875 Superior is asked by the Application Element to attempt to Confirm, but, dependent on the
 876 preparedness of its Inferiors, the top-most Superior makes the final decision. Consequently the
 877 top-most Superior is termed the **Decider**; the Application Element that asks it to Confirm is the
 878 **Terminator**.

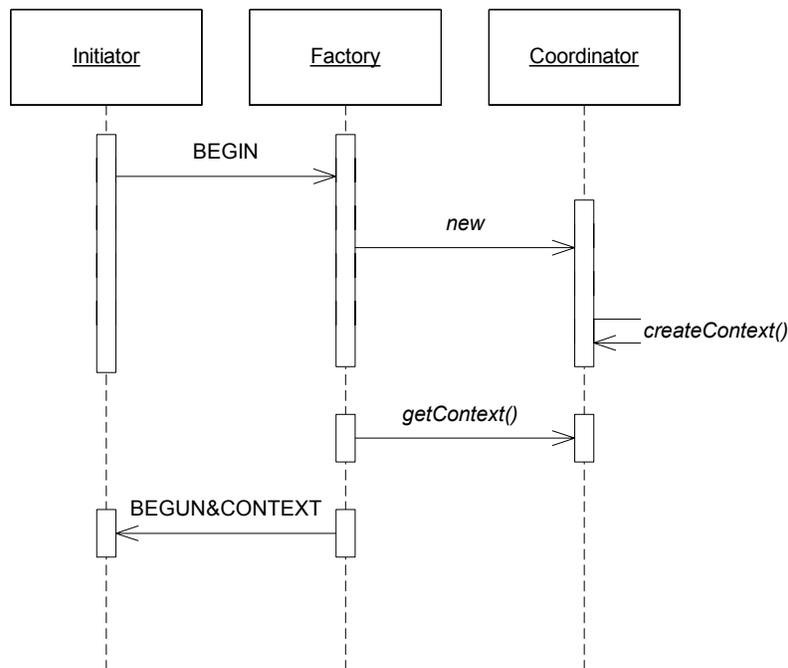
879 3.1.9 Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers

880 An Inferior may directly be responsible for applying the Confirm-or-Cancel decision to some
 881 application effects, or may in turn be a BTP Superior to which others will enrol. If it only handles
 882 application effects it is called a **Participant**, in the latter case it is called a **Sub-coordinator** or a
 883 **Sub-composer**, depending on whether it is atomic or cohesive with respect to its own future
 884 Inferiors. (If an Inferior is both responsible for application effects, and is a BTP Superior, it is not
 885 considered a Participant, according to the strict definitions, though informally it may be referred to
 886 as such.) The Superior is unaware, via the BTP exchanges, whether the Inferior is a Participant,
 887 Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer. This specification does not define messages or interfaces for
 888 the creation of Participants or for the Application Element to tell the Participant what the
 889 application effects are or how they are to be confirmed or cancelled as necessary. (Although out-
 890 of-scope for this specification, one or more APIs could be standardised.)

891 3.2 Business transaction lifecycle

892 3.2.1 Business Transaction creation

893 This section describes in some detail how a BTP Business Transaction is created. The
 894 interaction diagram in Figure 6 also shows this sequence. The messages shown in lower-case
 895 italics (between Factory and Coordinator) represent interactions that are not specified in BTP.



896

897 *Figure 6 – Creation of a Business Transaction*

898 A Business Transaction is started at the initiative of an Application Element, which causes the
899 creation of a Coordinator or Composer. Any Inferiors participating in this transaction will enrol
900 with this Superior. BTP defines abstract messages (BEGIN, BEGUN) to request this but the
901 equivalent function can also be achieved using proprietary means, especially if the Factory or
902 Coordinator is an internal component of the initiating application. If the BTP messages are used,
903 the Application Element performs the Role of Initiator and sends BEGIN to a Factory. The BEGIN
904 message identifies whether a Coordinator (for an Atom) or a Composer (for a Cohesion) is
905 desired. The Factory, after the creation of the new Coordinator or Composer, replies with a
906 BEGUN message, which contains a CONTEXT message. The Coordinator's or Composer's
907 creation is the establishment of a new instance of a BTP Role. It may involve only the
908 assignment of a new identifier within an existing Actor (which may also be performing the Factory
909 Role, for example). Alternatively a new Actor with a distinct address may be instantiated. These
910 and other alternatives are implementation choices, and BTP ensures other Actors are unaffected
911 by the choice made.

912 The BEGUN message provides the addressing and identification information needed for a
913 Terminator to access the new Coordinator or Composer as Decider; the Application Element
914 performing the Initiator Role may itself act as Terminator, or may pass this information to some
915 other Application Element.

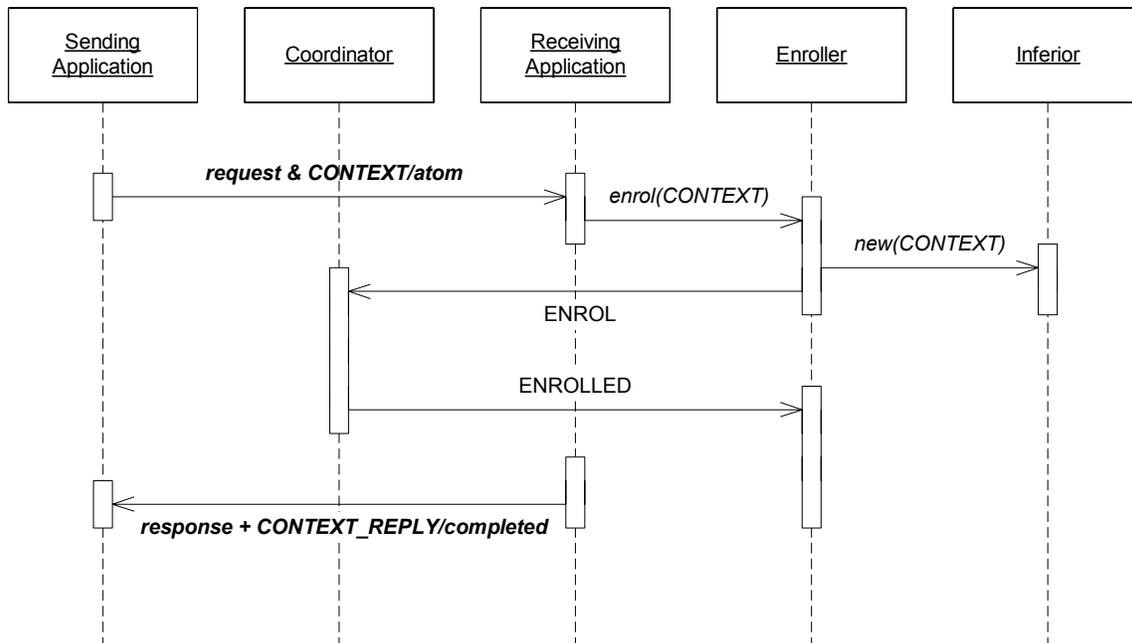
916 Whether this interoperable BTP Initiator:Factory relationship or some other mechanism is used to
917 initiate the Business Transaction, a CONTEXT is made available. This identifies the Coordinator
918 or Composer as a Superior – containing both addressing information and the identification of the
919 relevant state information. The CONTEXT is also marked as to whether or not this Superior will
920 behave atomically with respect to its Inferiors (i.e. is it a Coordinator or Composer).

921 **3.2.2 Business Transaction propagation**

922 The propagation of the Business Transaction from one party to another, to establish the
923 Superior:Inferior relationships, involves the transmission of the CONTEXT. This is commonly in
924 association with, or related to, one or more Application Messages between the parties. In a
925 typical case, an Application Message is sent from the Application Element that performed the
926 Initiator Role (the “sending application” in Figure 2) to some other Application Element (the
927 receiving application). The CONTEXT is sent with the Application Message in such a way that the
928 Application Elements understand that work performed as a result of the Application Message is to
929 be the subject of a Confirm-or-Cancel decision of the Superior.² The receiving Application
930 Element causes the creation of an Inferior (which, as for the Superior may involve just
931 assignment on a new identifier, or instantiation of an new Actor) and ensures the new Inferior is
932 enrolled with the Superior identified in the received CONTEXT, using an ENROL message sent to
933 the Superior using the address in that CONTEXT.

934 Figure 7 shows a sequence diagram of the propagation of a Business Transaction. It is assumed
935 the transaction has already been created, and thus the Application Element and Coordinator
936 exist. The diagram shows the Enroller as a distinct Role, with non-standardised interactions
937 between the Application Element, the Enroller and the new Inferior. The Enroller Role may in fact
938 be performed by the Application Element, by the Inferior or by some other entity. At least the
939 Superior-identifier and Superior-address from the CONTEXT has to be passed the Enroller and to
940 the Inferior so they can communicate with the Coordinator (whose identifier and address these
941 are).

² The relationship between the application activity and BTP is subtle, and summarised in this sentence.



942

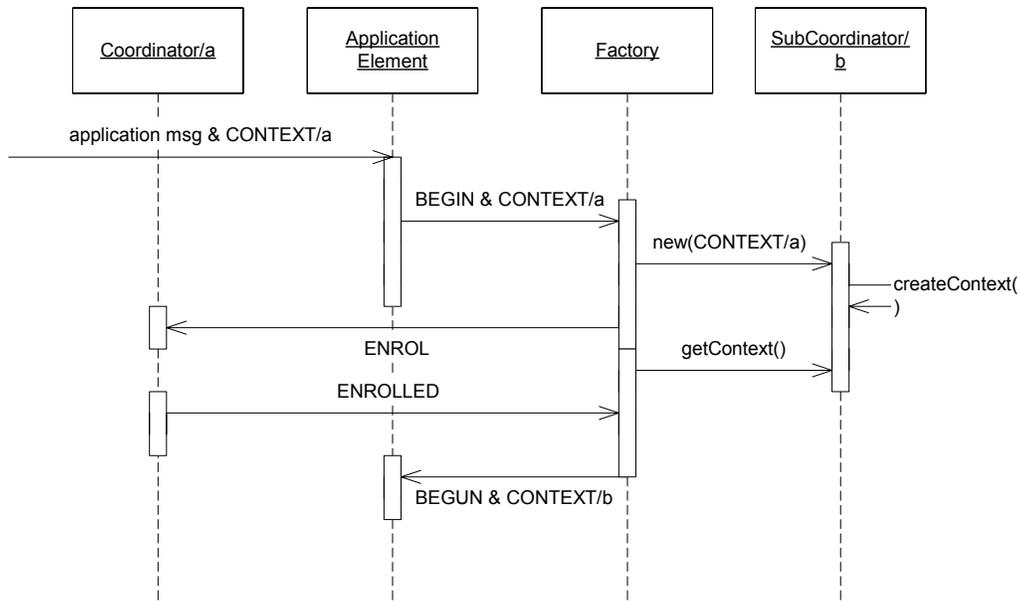
943 *Figure 7 Sequence diagram of propagation*

944

3.2.3 Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)

945

946 If the new Inferior is to be a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, this can be created using a non-
 947 standard mechanism or the Initiator:Factory relationship can be used again. Figure 8 shows a
 948 sequence diagram, using the latter mechanism. The Application Element, having received an
 949 Application Message and a CONTEXT from some Superior – shown as “Coordinator/a” in the
 950 diagram - wants to create the new Inferior. Acting in the Initiator Role, the Application Element
 951 issues BEGIN to the Factory, with the CONTEXT for the original Superior (Coordinator/a) as a
 952 field of the BEGIN. The Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Sub-coordinator or Sub-
 953 composer as an Inferior of the Superior identified by the received CONTEXT. The reply from the
 954 Factory is a BEGUN containing a CONTEXT – this being the CONTEXT for the new Sub-
 955 coordinator (‘b’) or Sub-composer as a Superior. The Sub-coordinator/Sub-composer is not a
 956 Decider, as its decision is subordinated to the outcome received from the Superior. For a Sub-
 957 coordinator, further control by the application is primarily a matter of relating the new CONTEXT
 958 to appropriate application activity. For a Sub-composer, there is also a requirement for the
 959 application to determine which of the Inferiors of the Sub-composer must have reported they are
 960 prepared before the Sub-composer can report that it is itself prepared to its own Superior, and
 961 then which of these Inferiors are to be ordered to Confirm if the Sub-composer is ordered to
 962 Confirm. This specification does not provide an interface or interoperable message to control this;
 963 like the relationship between Application Element and Participant, it is left to the implementation
 964 or independent standardisation.



965

966 *Figure 8 – Creation of a Sub-coordinator*

967 The creation of a new Inferior and establishment of a Superior:Inferior relationship does not
 968 always imply that the BTP Actors are under the control of different business parties or Application
 969 Elements. In particular, an Application Element may begin a Cohesion, then create and enrol
 970 (atomic) Sub-coordinators as Inferiors of the Composer, then associate a different Sub-
 971 coordinator's CONTEXT with each of several aspects of the application work, transmitting that
 972 CONTEXT with the Application Messages for that aspect to the other parties in the Business
 973 Transaction. Those parties can then create Participants (or other Inferiors) that are enrolled with
 974 the appropriate Sub-coordinator. Later, the Application Element (as Terminator, or its equivalent)
 975 can choose which of the Cohesion Composers' Inferiors to Cancel and which to Confirm. By
 976 interposing its own atomic Sub-coordinator the initiating Application Element can indicate to the
 977 other parties that some associated set of application work will be confirmed or cancelled as a unit.
 978 This may allow the receiving parties to share information between **Application Operations** and
 979 to make one Participant responsible for applying the outcome to several operations.

980 **3.2.4 “Checking” and context-reply**

981 In BTP, enrolment is at the initiative of an Application Element that has received or has access to
 982 the CONTEXT which creates an Inferior (BTP uses a “pull” paradigm for enrolment). An
 983 Application Element in possession of a CONTEXT can choose, perhaps constrained by an
 984 overarching business and application understanding, whether and how many Inferiors to create
 985 and enrol. Consequently, in general, an Application Element which propagates a CONTEXT to
 986 another (via whatever mechanisms it choose), cannot be sure how many Inferiors will be enrolled
 987 as a result. Without further controls, there would be a possibility that an Application Element
 988 receiving a CONTEXT might attempt to enrol an Inferior with a Superior after the Superior had
 989 been asked to Confirm and had received PREPARED from all the Inferiors it knew about, or even
 990 had completed confirmation. In such a case application work that should have been part of a
 991 confirmed Atomic Business Transaction could be cancelled, violating the atomicity in a manner
 992 that will not be apparent to the application.

993 To avoid this, whenever a CONTEXT is transmitted to another party by or on behalf of the
 994 application, the transmission of the CONTEXT itself can be replied to with a CONTEXT_REPLY
 995 message – this is required for an Atom, allowed for a Cohesion. An Application Element that has

996 received a BTP CONTEXT is able, because it knows the Superior's identification and address in
997 the CONTEXT, to enrol Inferiors (Figure 9).³ Replying with CONTEXT_REPLY means that the
998 sender (the earlier receiver of a CONTEXT) will not enrol any more Inferiors (unless it follows the
999 "late enrolment discipline", see below). Consequently the sender of a CONTEXT can keep track of
1000 whether there are any outstanding (un-replied to) CONTEXTs that could be used for an
1001 enrolment and can avoid requesting or permitting confirmation until everything is safe. This check
1002 is required for an Atom, but is not always essential when the CONTEXT is for a Cohesion. For a
1003 Cohesion, it is a matter for the controlling application whether all would-be Inferiors must be
1004 enrolled before a confirmation decision can be made; or whether it is acceptable to proceed to
1005 confirmation at some point in time with the already enrolled Inferiors (or a subset thereof),
1006 accepting the automatic cancellation of any late arrivals.

1007 CONTEXT_REPLY can also indicate that attempted enrollments failed. This can occur if the
1008 Enroller is unable to contact the Superior, but it able to return a CONTEXT_REPLY to where-ever
1009 the CONTEXT came from.

1010 Despite the above considerations, it is safe for an Application Element to enrol Inferiors after it
1011 has sent a CONTEXT_REPLY and even after the Superior has begun the termination sequence,
1012 provided it follows the "late enrolment discipline". This requires that the Application Element
1013 ensures that there is an already enrolled Inferior of the same Superior, and that this existing
1014 Inferior does not go prepared or resign until it is known that the new Inferior is correctly enrolled.
1015 The Superior (at least if atomic) will be unable to make a confirm decision until it has received
1016 PREPARED or RESIGN from that first Inferior and there is thus no risk of the new Inferior
1017 breaking the atomicity guarantee. Again, for a Cohesion, it is a matter for the controlling
1018 application to determine when a confirm decision is appropriate.

1019 3.2.5 Message sequence

1020 BTP messages are used in relationships between several pairs of roles. These particular pair-
1021 wise relationships can be categorised into:

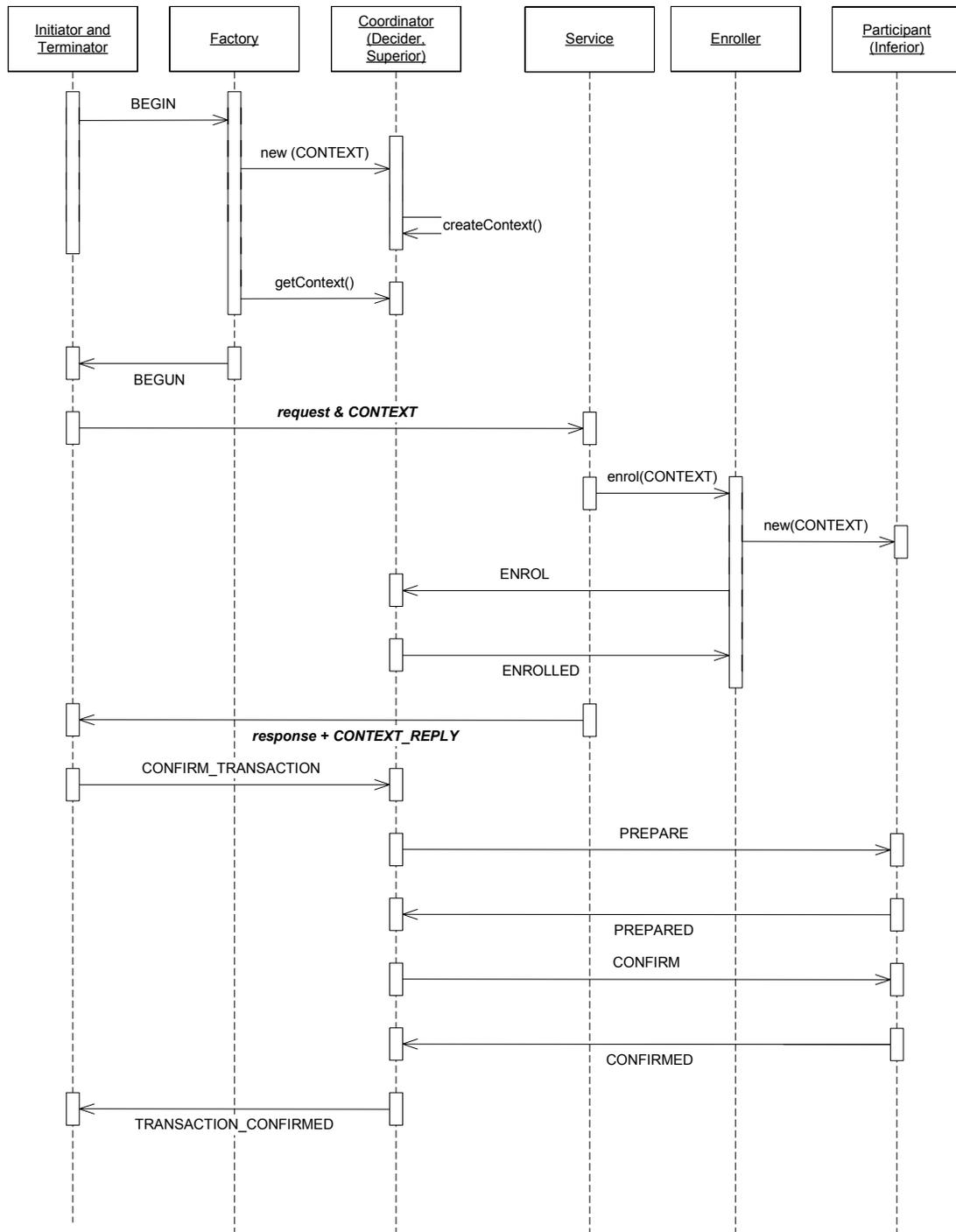
- 1022 • **Outcome Relationships** : the Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP Actors within
1023 the Transaction Tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it
- 1024 • **Control Relationships** : the application:BTP Actor relationships that create the nodes of the
1025 Transaction Tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

1026 The Outcome Relationships and the messages used in them are essential parts of BTP. For the
1027 Control Relationships, it would be possible to achieve the same general function using non-
1028 standardised messages or API mechanisms. There are other distinguishable relationships
1029 between roles defined by BTP that are not standardised in this specification.

1030 Figure 9 shows the message exchange for the conventional progression of a simple transaction
1031 to confirmation with a single Superior:Inferior relationship, assuming the standard Control
1032 Relationship. Two Application Elements using a request/response Application Message exchange
1033 are involved – the first is represented as the Initiator and Terminator, the second as the Service
1034 and Enroller. The Decider/Supervisor is shown as a Coordinator, but with only one Inferior there
1035 would be no difference with a Cohesion Composer. The Factory:Coordinator events are non-
1036 standardised, but represent interactions that must occur in some form. There are other
1037 interactions between the various application groups – Initiator-Terminator and Participant-
1038 Enroller-Service that are not shown – in particular the Service:Participant relationship.

1039 The message sequence is shown is the "conventional" sequence, with all messages explicitly
1040 present and sent separately. There are several variations and optimisations possible – these are
1041 discussed below.

³ The "application element" from the perspective of BTP may include infrastructure software such as containers or interceptors, as well the application-specific code itself.



1042

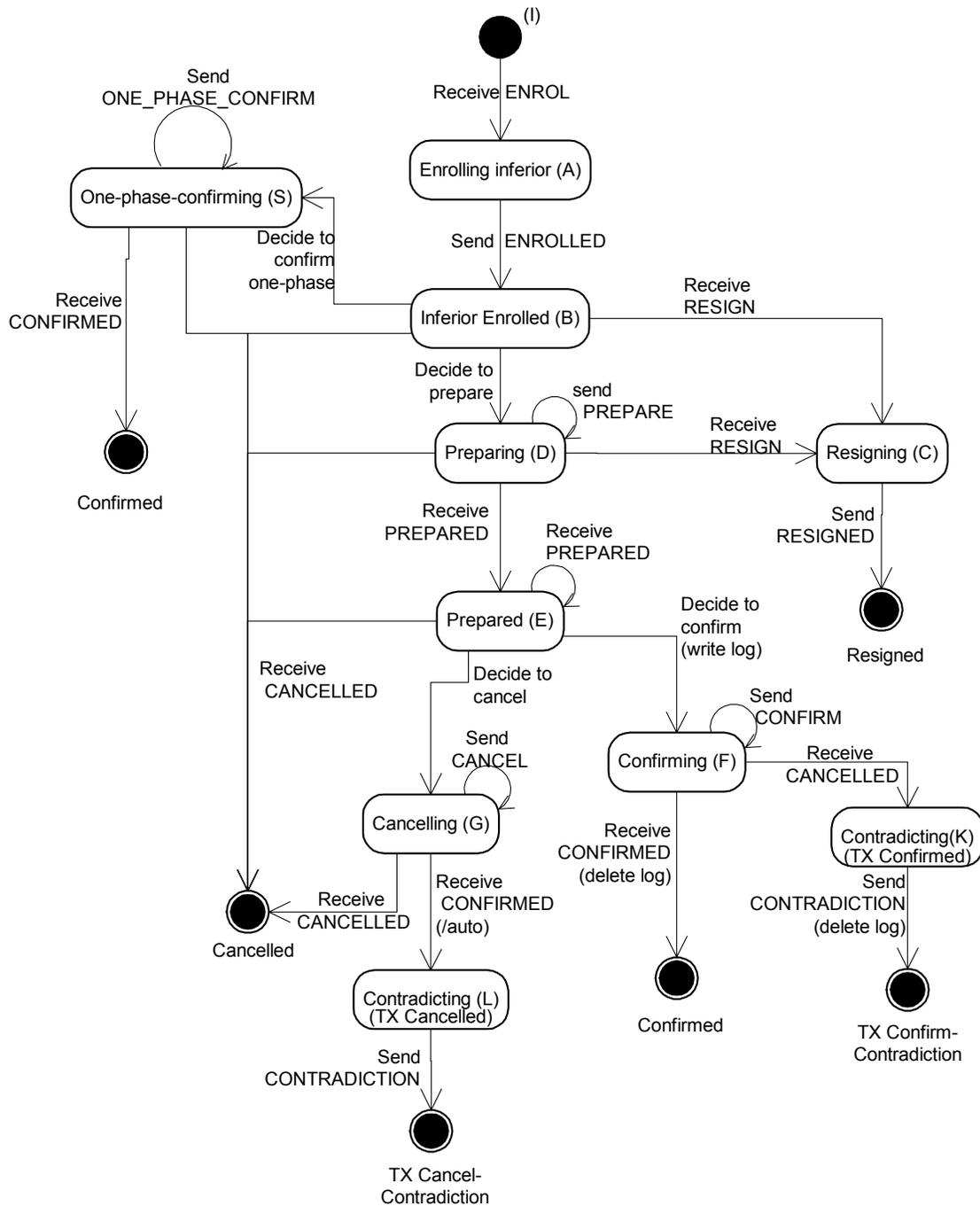
1043 *Figure 9 A conventional message sequence for a simple transaction*

1044 Note the CONTEXT, passed to the Initiator as a field of the BEGUN has “related” (&) relationship
 1045 to the application request, although the exact meaning of this is defined by the application, not by
 1046 BTP. The response + CONTEXT_REPLY need have no semantic significance, and could be sent
 1047 separately, provided the CONTEXT_REPLY is not sent until the ENROLLED has returned.
 1048 (CONTEXT-REPLY does have a “related” relationship to an application message when used to
 1049 pass the identifier for the new Inferior, though again the exact meaning will be defined by the
 1050 application.)

1051 The progression of a single instance of the central outcome (Superior:Inferior) relationship can
1052 also be presented as a set of state transitions. The normative part of the specification includes
1053 state tables for the Superior side of such a relationship and for the Inferior. Since a single
1054 Superior (Coordinator, Composer, Sub-coordinator, Sub-composer) can have multiple Inferiors,
1055 each Superior will have multiple instances of the “Superior state”. How these link together is
1056 discussed below in the section “3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set”, but the state transitions for the
1057 individual Superior:Inferior relationships include “decision events” which constrain the behaviour
1058 of the **Business Transaction Tree Node** as a whole, and thus define the semantics of the BTP
1059 messages.

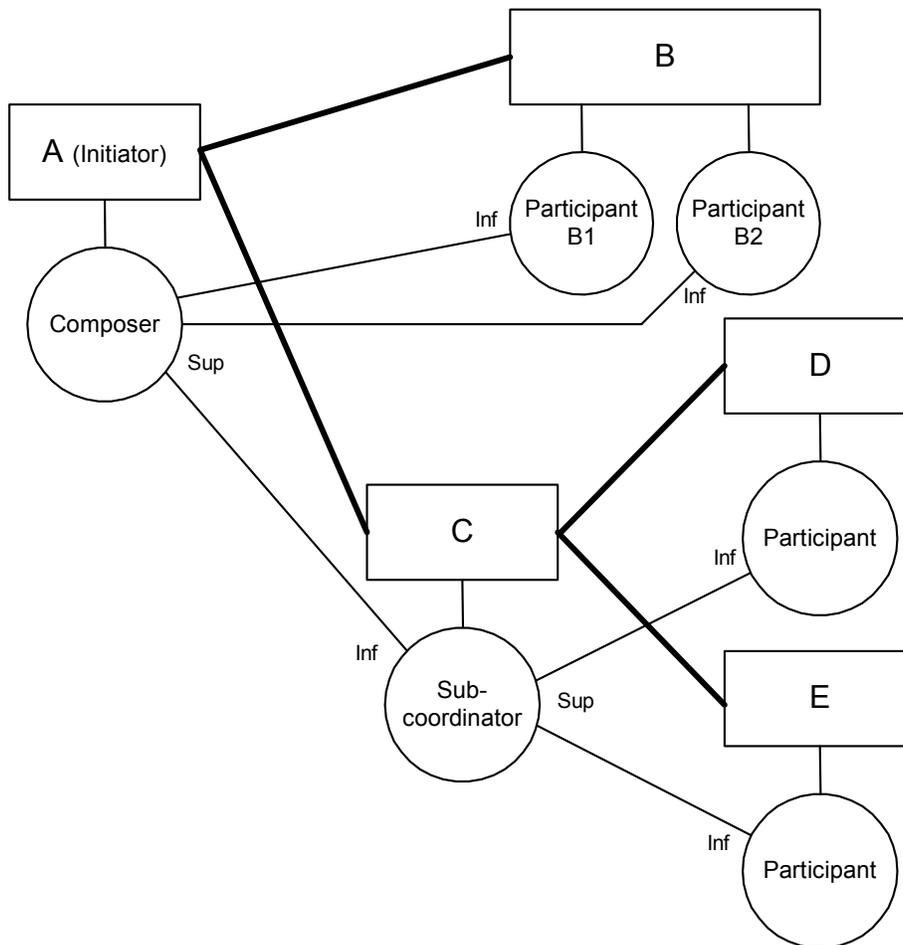
1060 The normative state tables distinguish some states that differ only in which messages can be
1061 received and thus allow for a level of error checking. The progress of the Outcome Relationship
1062 can be followed without dropping to such a detailed level, and the state diagrams shown here
1063 aggregate some of the states that are distinguished in the state tables. The single letters in
1064 parentheses in the diagrams correspond to the state names used in the tables. For simplicity, the
1065 state diagrams do not include the events leading to the sending of a HAZARD message – the
1066 detection and recording of a “problem” – meaning that the Inferior is unable to cleanly Confirm or
1067 cleanly Cancel the operations it is responsible for. As is specified in the state tables, such a
1068 problem can be detected in most states, and reported with a HAZARD message.

1069 It should be noted that, with some exceptions, the transmission of a message **from** a Superior or
1070 Inferior does not cause a state change at that side. State changes are normally caused either by
1071 the receipt of a message from the **Peer**, or by a “decision event” – which may be an internal
1072 change, including a change in the persistent information for the transactions, or may be the
1073 receipt of a message on another relationship (e.g. as when a Sub-coordinator receives CANCEL
1074 from its Superior, which is a decision event as perceived on the relationships to its Inferiors). It
1075 would be normal for an implementation on entering a new state to send the message it can now
1076 send (there will be only one). It may repeat this message at any interval – in practice only if there
1077 is reason to believe (due to lower-layer errors, timeout or known recovery events) that messages
1078 may have got lost.



1079

1080 Figure 10 State diagram for Superior side of a Superior:Inferior relationship



1090

1091 *Figure 12 Transaction Tree showing various application:Participant relationships*

1092 The relationship between the Application Messages and either the propagated CONTEXT or the
 1093 ENROL message(s) sent to the Superior is strictly part of the Application Protocol (or the
 1094 application-with-BTP combination protocol). However defined, this allows the Superior-side
 1095 Application Element to be aware of what application work will be confirmed or cancelled under the
 1096 control of an Inferior. However, from the perspective of the Superior, and the Application Element
 1097 controlling it, the Inferior is opaque – it is not in general possible for the Superior or its controlling
 1098 Application Element to determine whether an Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator (i.e.
 1099 has Inferiors of its own) or is a Participant, with no further BTP relationships. Thus, if the Inferior
 1100 is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator, the Superior has no visibility or control of its “grand-
 1101 children” – the Inferiors of its Inferior (thus, in Figure 12, the Composer at A is unaware of D and
 1102 E)

1103 The opacity of an Inferior does not however apply to the control exercised by the immediately
 1104 controlling Application Element. An Application Element, acting as Terminator to a Decider (i.e. to
 1105 a Composer or Coordinator), can be aware of and distinguish the different Inferiors enrolled with
 1106 that Decider (i.e. Inferiors enrolled with the Decider in its Role as Superior). (E.g.in Figure 12,
 1107 Application Element A knows of the Inferiors at C, B1 and B2) This is especially the case for a
 1108 Cohesion Composer, where the Terminator will be able to control which of the enrolled Inferiors
 1109 of the Composer are eventually confirmed – more exactly, the application will have control of the
 1110 Confirm-set for the Cohesion. For an Atom Coordinator, visibility of the Inferiors is useful but less
 1111 important, since no selection can be made among which will be in the Confirm-set – for an Atom,
 1112 all Inferiors are ipso facto members of the Confirm-set.

1113 For this control of the Inferiors to be useful, the Terminator Application Element will need to be
1114 able to associate particular parts of the application work with each Inferior. In a traditional
1115 transaction system, users do not need to see participants, but they see services or objects. What
1116 participants are enlisted with a transaction on behalf of those services and objects is not really of
1117 interest to the user. When it comes to commit or rollback the transaction, it acts on the transaction
1118 and not on the individual participants.

1119 In BTP that is still the case if we work purely with atoms. While an Atomic Coordinator knows its
1120 participants it cannot pick and choose among them. In contrast, a Cohesive Terminator must
1121 have significant, detailed knowledge and visibility of both the identities of its inferiors and
1122 association of parts of the application work with each Inferior. The user must be able to identify
1123 which participants to cancel/prepare/confirm. This identification can be achieved by various
1124 means. Taking the case of an Application Element controlling a Cohesion Composer:

1125 a) The Application Element can create an Atom Sub-coordinator as an immediate Inferior of
1126 the Cohesion Composer and propagate the Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT associated with
1127 Application Messages concerned with the particular part of the application work; any
1128 Inferiors (however many there may be) enrolled with Sub-coordinator can be assumed to
1129 be responsible for (some of) that part of the application, and the Terminator Application
1130 Element can just deal with the immediate Inferior of the Composer that it created.

1131 b) The Application Element can propagate the Composer's own CONTEXT, and the
1132 receiving Application Element can create its own Inferior (or Inferiors) which will be
1133 responsible for some part of the application, and send ENROL(s) to the Composer (as
1134 Superior). Application Messages concerned with that part of the application are
1135 associated, directly or indirectly, with each ENROL, and the Terminator Application
1136 Element can thus determine what each Inferior is responsible for.

1137 In both cases, the means by which the Application Message and the BTP CONTEXT or ENROL
1138 are associated are ultimately application-specific, and there are several ways this can be done.

- 1139 • At the abstract message level, BTP defines the concept of transmitting "related" BTP and
1140 Application Messages – particular bindings to Carrier Protocols can specify interoperable
1141 ways to represent this relatedness (e.g. the BTP message can be in a "header" field of the
1142 Carrier Protocol, the Application Message in the body).
- 1143 • An Application Message may contain fields that identify or point to the BTP message (e.g. the
1144 "inferior-identifier" from the ENROL may be a field of the Application Message).
- 1145 • BTP messages, including CONTEXT and ENROL, can carry "qualifiers" – extension fields
1146 that are not core parts of BTP or are not defined by BTP at all. The standard qualifier "inferior-
1147 name" or application-specific qualifiers can be used to associate application information and
1148 the BTP message. The qualifiers received from the Inferiors on ENROL are visible to the
1149 Terminator application on the INFERIOR_STATUSES message. The application design will
1150 need to ensure that the Terminator can determine which parts of the application work are
1151 associated with each Inferior.

1152 *NOTE -- For example, a service receiving an invocation associated with a*
1153 *Cohesion CONTEXT, but where the application design meant that there would be*
1154 *no more than one Inferior enrolled as a result of that invocation, could be required*
1155 *to include information identifying the service and the invocation in the "inferior-*
1156 *name" qualifier on the consequent ENROL. These qualifiers would be visible to the*
1157 *Terminator on INFERIOR_STATUSES, allowing the Terminator to determine which*
1158 *"inferior-identifiers" to include in the "inferiors-list" parameter of the*
1159 *CONFIRM_TRANSACTION which defines which Inferiors are to be confirmed.*
1160 *Among other alternatives, the "inferior-identifier" itself could be a field of the*
1161 *application response – this would also be applicable where there could be multiple*
1162 *Inferiors enrolled as a consequence of one invocation for the Terminator to choose*
1163 *between.*

1164 These considerations about control of the Inferiors of a Decider also apply to the control of the
1165 Inferiors of a Sub-composer (and, again of less importance, a Sub-coordinator).

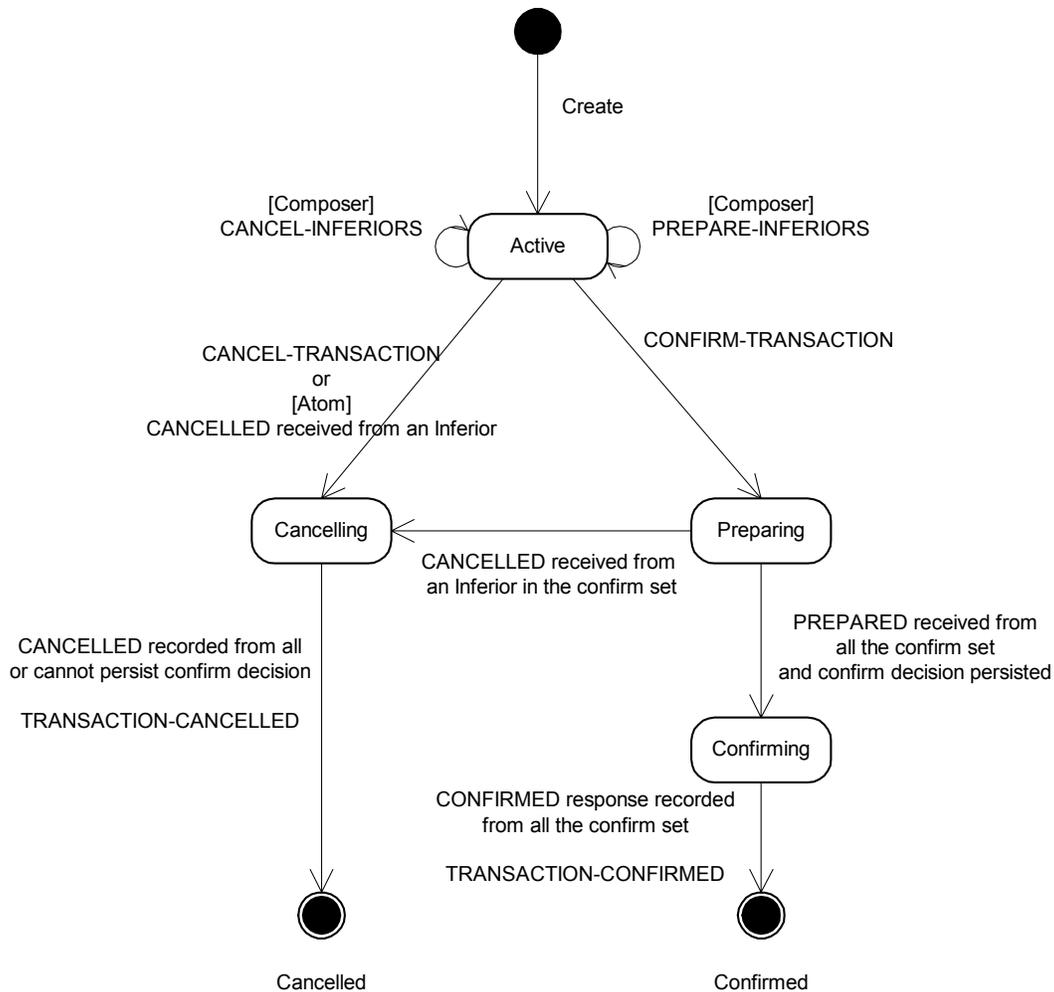
1166 **3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set**

1167 As mentioned above, the set of Inferiors of a Cohesion that will eventually Confirm is called the
1168 Confirm-set. The determination of the Confirm-set is made by the controlling application, but is
1169 affected by events from the Inferiors themselves. If the standard Control Relationship is used, the
1170 control of the Cohesion Composer is expressed by the Terminator:Decider exchanges, and the
1171 progressive determination of the Confirm-set (its evolution) is effectively the event sequence for
1172 the Terminator:Decider relationship.

1173 An Atom also has a Confirm-set, but this always includes all the Inferiors and so does not evolve
1174 in the same way as Cohesion's. With some exceptions, the Terminator:Decider relationship is the
1175 same for Atom Coordinators as for Cohesion Composers; this section deals with both, noting the
1176 exceptions.

1177 The event sequence for a Composer or Coordinator is summarised in the state diagram in Figure
1178 13. The step-by-step description refers to "Composer", but should be read as referring to
1179 Coordinators as well, unless stated otherwise.

1180 Initially, the Composer is created (by the Factory, using BEGIN with no related CONTEXT), and
1181 has no Inferiors. The Composer is now in the active state.



1182

1183 *Figure 13 State diagram for a Composer or Coordinator (i.e. Decider)*

1184 While in the active state, the following may occur, in any order and with any repetition or
 1185 overlapping:

- 1186 • Inferiors are enrolled – ENROL is received by the Composer – adding to the set of Inferiors of
 1187 the Composer.
- 1188 • Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior (see section 3.3.3 Resignation
 1189 below). The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors, as if it had never been
 1190 enrolled (a RESIGNED message may be sent to the Inferior, but it no longer “counts” in any
 1191 of the Composer-wide considerations here).
- 1192 • CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior; there is no required immediate effect, but if
 1193 this is a Coordinator the Atom will certainly Cancel eventually (and an implementation may
 1194 choose to initiate cancellation immediately).
- 1195 • PREPARED may be received; there is no immediate effect
- 1196 • The Terminator may issue PREPARE_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some
 1197 subset of the Inferiors; PREPARE is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset,
 1198 excluding any from RESIGN, CANCELLED or PREPARED has been received; the sending of
 1199 PREPARE will induce the Inferiors to reply with PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN; when
 1200 replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with
 1201 INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the replies received (which may in fact have been received

1202 before the PREPARE_INFERIORS). PREPARE_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom
1203 Coordinators.

1204 • The Terminator may issue CANCEL_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some
1205 subset of the Inferiors; CANCEL is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset,
1206 excluding any from RESIGN or CANCELLED has been received; the sending of CANCEL will
1207 normally induce the Inferiors to reply with CANCELLED – there are some exception cases;
1208 when replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the
1209 Terminator with INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the replies received.
1210 CANCEL_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom Coordinators. CANCEL_INFERIORS may be
1211 issued for an Inferior regardless of whether PREPARED has been received from it.

1212 • The Terminator may issue REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to the Composer (as Decider)
1213 for all or some subset of the Inferiors; the Composer immediately replies with
1214 INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the current state of the Inferiors as known to the Superior.

1215 Eventually, the Terminator issues one of the completion messages – CANCEL_TRANSACTION
1216 or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. These messages have a flag that determines whether the
1217 Terminator wishes to be informed of contradictory and heuristic decisions or hazards within the
1218 transaction – this affects when the reply from the Composer (as Decider) is sent to the
1219 Terminator. (See section “3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions” for
1220 details on contradictory and heuristic cases).

1221 If the message is CANCEL_TRANSACTION, CANCEL is sent to all Inferiors that it has not
1222 already been sent to, and from which neither RESIGN or CANCELLED have been received. If the
1223 Terminator indicates it does not want to be informed of contradictions, the Composer will
1224 immediately reply with TRANSACTION_CANCELLED. Otherwise, if and when CANCELLED or
1225 RESIGN has been received from all Inferiors, the Composer replies to the Terminator with
1226 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED; but if HAZARD or CONFIRMED is received from any Inferior, the
1227 reply is INFERIOR_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1228 If the completion message is CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, the inferiors-list parameter of the
1229 message defines the Confirm-set. If the parameter is absent (which it must be for an Atom
1230 Coordinator), then all Inferiors (excluding only those that have resigned) are the Confirm-set;
1231 otherwise the Confirm-set is only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (less any
1232 from which RESIGN has been received). The processing to arrive at the Confirm decision is:

1233 • If at the point of receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or at any point before making the
1234 Confirm decision (see below), CANCELLED is received, then the transaction is cancelled and
1235 processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received.

1236 • If there any Inferiors **not** in the Confirm-set from which neither CANCELLED or RESIGN has
1237 been received, CANCEL is sent to them (this cannot happen for Atom Coordinators)

1238 • If initially or later, there is exactly one Inferior in the Confirm-set, and either PREPARE has
1239 not been sent to it, or PREPARED has been received from it, then at implementation or
1240 configuration option, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be sent to that Inferior. This delegates the
1241 Confirm decision to the Inferior

1242 • If at any point, RESIGN is received from an Inferior, it is immediately removed from the
1243 Confirm-set (this may trigger the decision making)

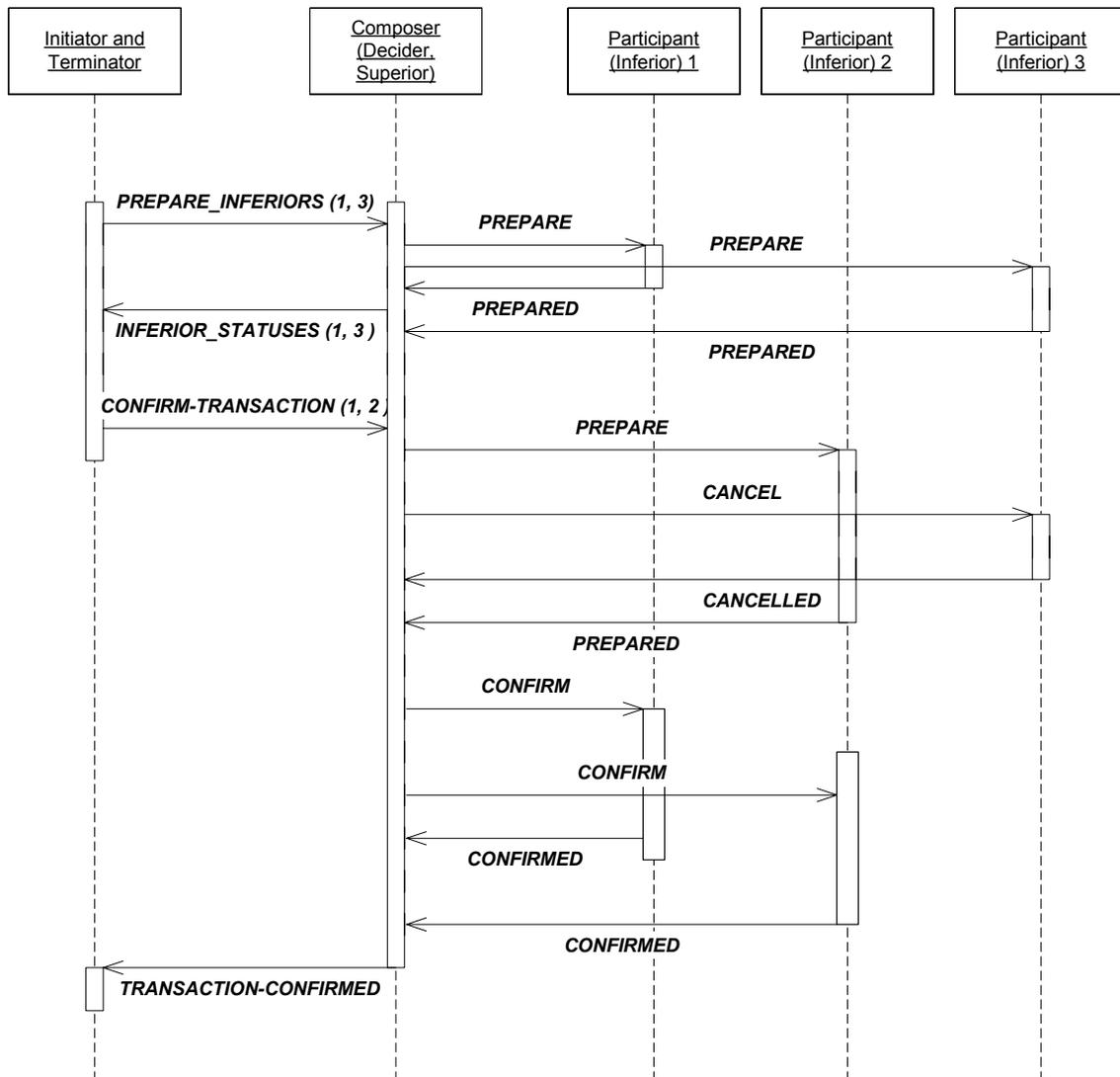
1244 • If there are any Inferiors in the Confirm-set from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED
1245 has been received and to which PREPARE has not yet been sent, PREPARE is sent to that
1246 Inferior

1247 • If initially or later, PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the Confirm-set, the
1248 Composer *makes the Confirm decision*; it persists (or attempts to persist) information
1249 identifying the Inferiors in the Confirm-set; if this fails, the transaction is cancelled and
1250 processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received; if the information is
1251 persisted, the Confirm decision has been made.

1252 When the Confirm decision is made, CONFIRM is sent to all the Inferiors in the Confirm-set. And,
1253 if on the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION the Terminator indicated it did not wish to be informed of
1254 contradictions, TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent to the Terminator.

1255 If the Terminator indicated it wanted to be informed of contradictions, the Composer replies to it
1256 with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED if and when CONFIRMED has been received from all the
1257 Inferiors in the Confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from any other
1258 Inferiors. If other replies (CANCELLED from a Confirm-set Inferior, CONFIRMED from other
1259 Inferiors, HAZARD from any) are received, the reply to the Terminator is INFERIOR_STATUSES,
1260 identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1261 Figure 14 shows an example message sequence for a Composer with three Inferiors. The
1262 Terminator (Application Element) chooses to prepare Inferiors 1 and 3 explicitly – the numbers in
1263 parentheses on the Terminator:Composer messages represent the inferior-identifiers in the
1264 “inferior-list” parameters. Both 1 and 3 prepare successfully, but the Terminator then decides to
1265 make 1 and 2 the Confirm-set; that is, if the transaction confirms only 1 and 2 are confirmed. The
1266 Terminator issues CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the Composer. A PREPARED message has not
1267 been received from Inferior 2 yet, so the Composer issues PREPARE to it, and waits for the
1268 PREPARED. At the same time, it sends CANCEL to Inferior 3, which has been excluded from the
1269 Confirm-set by the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. After the PREPARED is received from Inferior 2,
1270 the Composer makes the Confirm decision and issues CONFIRM to the Inferiors, and waits for
1271 the CONFIRMED messages before reporting to the Terminator. The CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
1272 in this case did not ask for reporting of hazards (see below) – if it had not, the
1273 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED would have been sent at the same time as the CONFIRM
1274 messages.



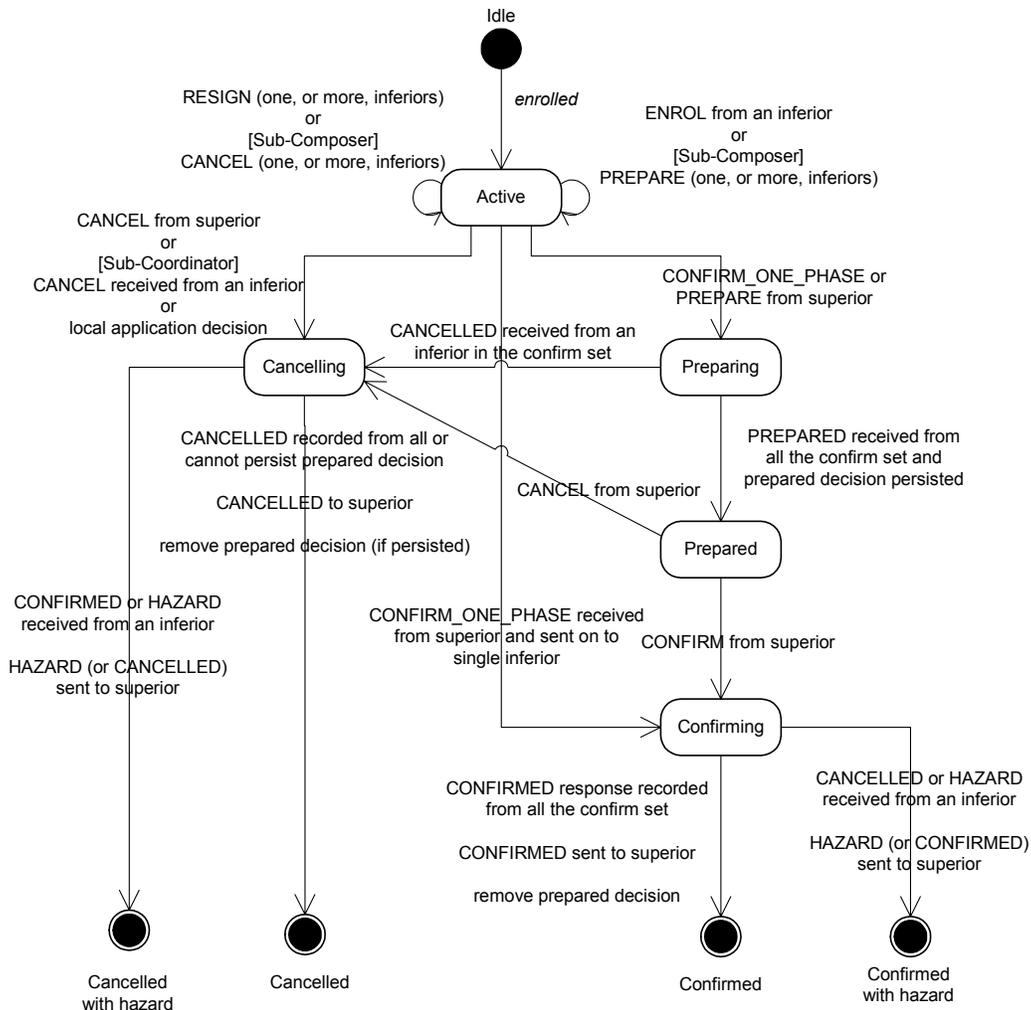
1275 Figure 14 Termination sequence for a composer

1276 3.2.8 Confirm-set of intermediates

1277 An Intermediate, that is a Superior that is also an Inferior, also has a Confirm-set, but this is
 1278 controlled rather differently to the top-most Superior (Decider) described above.

1279 As an Inferior, the interface between the application and BTP Elements is not fully defined in this
 1280 specification. However, within the standard Control Relationship, issuing BEGIN with a related
 1281 CONTEXT to a Factory will cause the creation of a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer (depending
 1282 on whether the BEGIN parameter asked for atomic or cohesive behaviour). Initially, of course, the
 1283 new Intermediate has no Inferiors – however, unlike a Participant (in the strict sense of the term),
 1284 it has a “superior-address” to which ENROL can be sent to enrol Inferiors. This address is a field
 1285 of the new CONTEXT.

1286 Figure 15 is a state diagram for a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator.



1287

1288 *Figure 15 State diagram for Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer*

1289 The behaviour of the Intermediate towards its Inferiors, during the active phase, is basically the
 1290 same as for the Decider:

- 1291
- 1292 • ENROL messages can be received, adding a new Inferior
 - 1293 • Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior. The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors
 - 1294 • CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior
 - 1295 • PREPARED may be received from an Inferior

1296 In some circumstances, receipt of an incoming message allows an Intermediate to determine that
 1297 a state change for the whole Transaction Tree Node takes place. The Intermediate is able to
 1298 send messages to its Superior at its own initiative (whereas a Decider can only respond to a
 1299 received message from the Terminator), so the receipt of a message from an Inferior can trigger
 1300 the sending of messages. This is especially the case if the Intermediate knows (from application
 1301 knowledge, perhaps involving received or sent CONTEXT_REPLY messages) that there will be
 1302 no further enrolments. In particular:

- 1303 • If CANCELLED is received from an Inferior, and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-
 1304 coordinator can itself Cancel - CANCEL is sent to other Inferiors, and CANCELLED to the
 1305 Superior

1306 • If RESIGN is received from the only Inferior and there will be no other enrolments, the
1307 Intermediate can itself resign, sending RESIGN to the Superior

1308 • If PREPARED is received from the Inferior, it is known there will be no other enrolments and
1309 this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can Become Prepared (assuming successful
1310 persistence of the appropriate information) and send PREPARED to the Superior.

1311 For a Sub-composer, application logic will invariably be involved in determining what effect a
1312 CANCELLED and PREPARED from an Inferior have – though in a real implementation, this logic
1313 may be delegated to the BTP-support software.

1314 The Intermediate may initiate cancellation or the two-phase outcome exchange, either as a result
1315 of receiving the corresponding message (CANCEL, PREPARE) from the Superior, or triggered by
1316 its own controlling Application Element. For a Sub-composer, this may be partial - a Sub-
1317 composer might be instructed by the Application Element to Cancel some Inferiors and send
1318 PREPARE to others. Receipt of PREPARE from the Superior will often have a similar effect to a
1319 Decider receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION – PREPARE is propagated to all Inferiors that
1320 have not indicated they are PREPARED. However, exactly what happens on receiving PREPARE
1321 will depend on the application – receipt of the PREPARE may be visible to the Application
1322 Element and cause it to initiate further application activity (perhaps causing enrolment of new
1323 Inferiors) before it is determined whether to propagate PREPARE; and with a Sub-composer,
1324 some of the Inferiors may be instructed to Cancel instead.

1325 Assuming the Intermediate does not Cancel as a whole (in which case CANCEL would be sent to
1326 all Inferiors), the Intermediate will at some point attempt to Become Prepared. If it is a Sub-
1327 coordinator, this will require that PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors. For a Sub-
1328 composer, application logic will determine from which Inferiors PREPARED is required, with the
1329 others being cancelled. In either case, the Intermediate will persist the information about the
1330 Inferiors that are to be in the Confirm-set and about the Superior, if this persisting is successful,
1331 send PREPARED to its own Superior.

1332 If CANCEL is subsequently received from the Superior, this is propagated to all the Inferiors and
1333 the persistent information removed (or effectively removed as far as recovery is concerned). It is
1334 not important which order this is done in, since the recovery sequence will ensure that a cancel
1335 outcome is eventually delivered anyway.

1336 If CONFIRM is received from the Superior (which can only be after sending PREPARED to the
1337 Superior), this is likewise propagated to the Inferiors. For a Sub-coordinator, CONFIRM is
1338 invariably sent to all Inferiors. However, for a Sub-composer it is possible that further application
1339 logic intervenes and some of the Inferiors are rejected from the Confirm-set at this late stage.
1340 (This can only occur when the application work, as defined by the Contract to the Superior, can
1341 be performed by some sub-set of the Inferiors.) The Intermediate may, but is not required to,
1342 change the persistent information to reflect the Confirm outcome (though a Sub-composer that
1343 selects only some Inferiors probably will need to re-write the information to ensure the correct
1344 subset are confirmed despite possible failures). If the information is not changed, then, on
1345 recovery, the Intermediate will find itself to be in a prepared state and will interrogate the Superior
1346 to re-determine the outcome. If the information is changed, a recovered Intermediate can
1347 immediately continue with ordering confirmation to its Inferiors.

1348 If CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is received from the Superior, either before or after the Intermediate
1349 has Become Prepared, the effect is very similar to a Decider receiving
1350 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. If there is only one Inferior, the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may be
1351 propagated to that Inferior. Otherwise, the Intermediate behaves as a Decider, making a Confirm
1352 decision if it can.

1353 If one or more Inferiors make contradictory autonomous decisions, or HAZARD is received from
1354 an Inferior, the Intermediate may report this to the Superior using HAZARD. However, BTP does
1355 not require this. Since the Superior may be owned and controlled by a different organisation,
1356 there may be business reasons not to report such problems.

1357 3.3 Optimisations and variations

1358 3.3.1 Spontaneous prepared

1359 As described above, before a Superior can order confirmation to an Inferior, the Inferior must
1360 become “prepared”, meaning that it is ready to Confirm or to Cancel as it so ordered and send the
1361 PREPARED message as a report of this. In the conventional message sequence, as shown
1362 above, the Inferior attempts to Become Prepared when it receives a PREPARE message from
1363 the Superior. The PREPARE in turn is sent by the Superior when it receives an appropriate
1364 request from its controlling application (or from its own Superior, if there is one). The application
1365 controlling the Superior will request the sending of PREPARE when it determines that no further
1366 application work associated with this Inferior (or, perhaps with the whole Business Transaction)
1367 will occur.

1368 However, for some applications, the Application Element controlling the Inferior will know that the
1369 application work for which the Inferior will be responsible is complete before a PREPARE is sent
1370 from the Superior. In fact, because the Application Element has autonomy in determining how
1371 application work is to be allocated to Inferiors, it is possible for the Inferior-side Application
1372 Element to know the work is complete **for a particular Inferior** when Superior-side Application
1373 Element will be sending more message to the Inferior-side. (The future work will, probably,
1374 require the enrollment of additional Inferiors.)

1375 BTP consequently allows the Application Element controlling an Inferior to cause the Inferior to
1376 Become Prepared, and to send PREPARED to the Superior without PREPARE having been
1377 received from the Superior. From the perspective of the BTP Superior the Inferior sends
1378 PREPARED spontaneously. Apart from this, a spontaneous PREPARED message is the same
1379 as, and has the same effect and implications as one induced by a PREPARE message.

1380 3.3.2 One-shot

1381 In the “conventional” message sequence shown above and assuming the Initiator, Terminator
1382 and Coordinator on the one side, and “Service”, Enroller and Participant on the other are located
1383 within their respective parties, there are eight messages passed in one direction or the other
1384 between the two parties. There are four round-trip exchanges: the application request and
1385 response exchange, the ENROL/ENROLLED exchange (going in the opposite direction and
1386 overlapped with the application exchange), then PREPARE/PREPARED and the
1387 CONFIRM/CONFIRMED. However, if the application exchange is a single request/response, it is
1388 possible to reduce these eight to two round-trips– the first of which merges the first three of the
1389 conventional sequence. The fundamental two-phase nature of BTP (or any coordination
1390 mechanism) means there have to be at least two round trips – one before the Confirm-or-Cancel
1391 decision is made at the Superior, one after. This merging of the exchanges is termed “one-shot”,
1392 as it requires only one exchange to take the relationship from non-existent to waiting for the
1393 Confirm-or-Cancel decision.

1394 Figure 16 shows a typical “one-shot” message sequence. The diagram distinguishes an
1395 additional aspect of the Application Elements, labelled “context-handler”. This is not a Role in the
1396 BTP model, but is used only to distinguish a set of responsibilities and actions. In a real
1397 implementation these might be performed by the user application itself, or might be performed by
1398 the BTP-supporting infrastructure on the path between the Application Elements. (Figure 9 could
1399 be redrawn to show the context-handlers, but to no particular benefit) As in the conventional
1400 case, the CONTEXT is sent related to the application request (the creation of the CONTEXT by
1401 the Factory is not shown and is the same as the conventional case). The “context-handler” is
1402 aware of the sending of the CONTEXT.

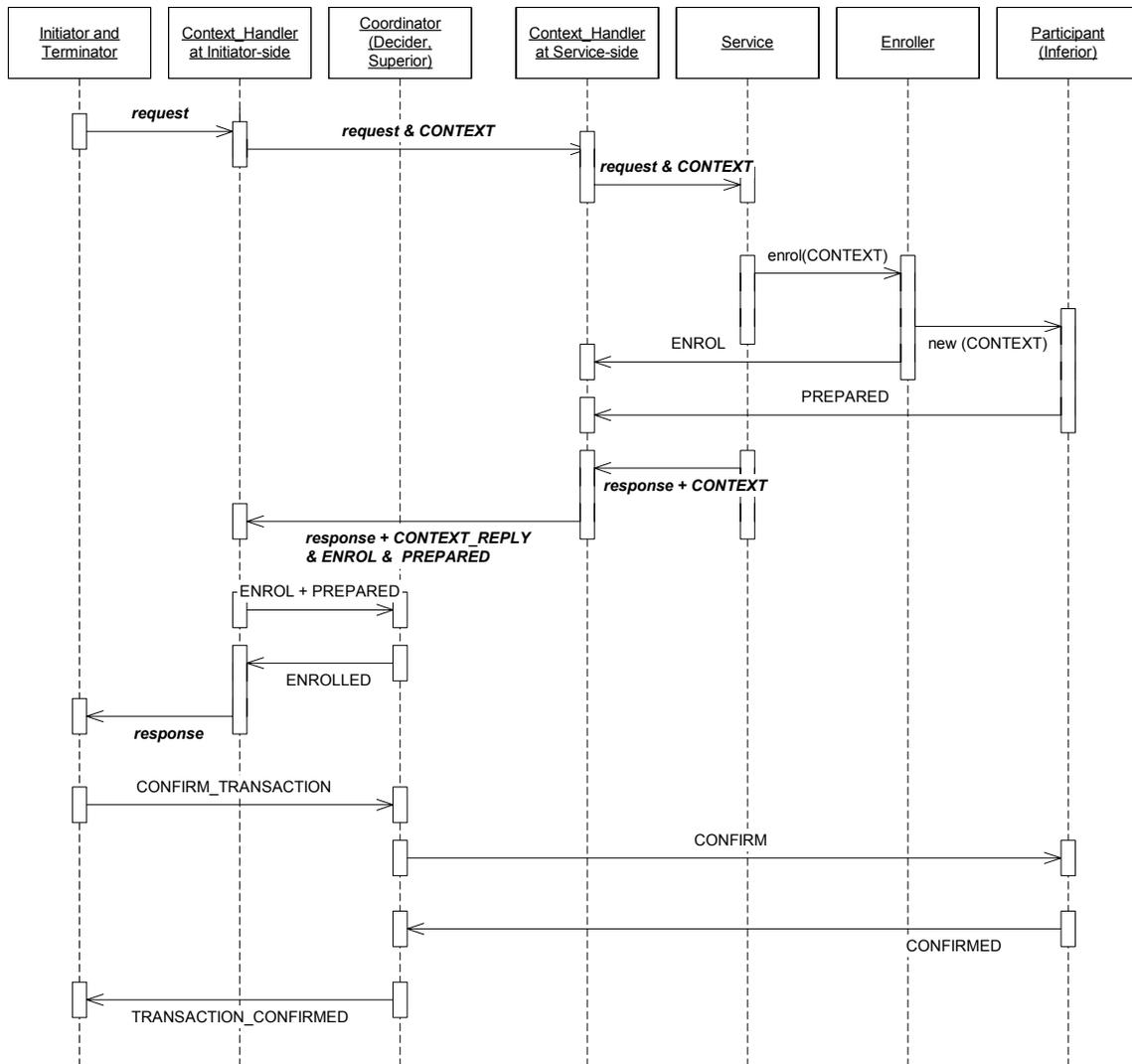
1403 On the responder (service side), however, when the Application Element creates the Inferior, the
1404 ENROL is not sent immediately, but retained. The application performs the “Provisional Effect”
1405 implied by the received message and the Inferior becomes prepared and issues a PREPARED
1406 message, which is also retained. When the application response is available, it is sent with the

1407 retained messages and the CONTEXT_REPLY (which indicates that the related ENROL will
1408 complete the enrolments implied by the earlier transmission of the CONTEXT.

1409 When this group of messages is received by the context-handler on the Client side, the contained
1410 ENROL and PREPARED messages are forwarded to the Superior (whose address was on the
1411 original CONTEXT and so is known to the context-handler). An ENROLLED message is sent
1412 back to the context-handler, assuring it that the enrolment was successful and the application can
1413 progress. If enrollment fails and the Business Transaction is atomic, confirmation must be
1414 prevented – this responsibility falls on the context-handler and the Client application, since the
1415 failure of the enrolment implies that Superior itself is inaccessible. If enrolment fails and the
1416 Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the appropriate response is a matter for the application.

1417 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single Application Message,
1418 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each one sent related with the
1419 CONTEXT_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message may be sent instead of a
1420 PREPARED – if the Superior is atomic, this will ensure it cancels, if cohesive, the Client
1421 application will be aware of this and behave appropriately.

1422 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
1423 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
1424 the application or by the binding in use.



1425

1426 *Figure 16 A message sequence showing the “one-shot” optimisation*

1427 **3.3.3 Resignation**

1428 After an Inferior is enrolled, it may be determined that the application work it is responsible for has
 1429 no real effect – more exactly, that the Counter-effect, if cancelled, and the Final Effect, if
 1430 confirmed, will be identical. In such a case the Inferior can effectively un-enrol itself by sending a
 1431 RESIGN message to the Superior. This can be done “spontaneously” (as far as BTP is
 1432 concerned) or as a response to a received PREPARE message. It cannot be done after the
 1433 Inferior has Become Prepared.

1434 An Inferior from which RESIGN has been received is not considered an Inferior in discussion of
 1435 the Confirm-set – the phrase “remaining Inferiors” is used to mean only non-resigned Inferiors.

1436 **3.3.4 One-phase confirmation**

1437 If a Coordinator or Composer that has been requested to Confirm has only one (remaining)
 1438 Inferior in the Confirm-set, it may delegate the Confirm-or-Cancel decision to that Inferior, just
 1439 requesting it to Confirm rather than performing the two-phase exchange. This is done by sending
 1440 the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message. Unlike the two-phase exchange (PREPARED received,
 1441 CONFIRM sent), it is possible with CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE for a failure to occur that leads to

1442 the original Coordinator or Composer (and its controlling Application Element – the Terminator)
1443 being uncertain whether the outcome was confirmation or cancellation.

1444 **3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions**

1445 As described above, BTP does not require a Participant, while it is responsible for holding
1446 application resources such that can be confirmed or cancelled, to use any particular mechanism
1447 for maintaining this state. A Participant that “becomes prepared” may choose to let the
1448 “Provisional Effect” be identical to the “Final Effect”, and hold a compensating “counter effect”
1449 ready to implement cancellation; or it may make the Provisional Effect effectively null, and only
1450 perform the real application work as the Final Effect if confirmed; or the “Provisional Effect” may
1451 involve performance of the application work and locking application data against other access; or
1452 other patterns, as may be constrained or permitted by the application.

1453 Although a Participant is not required to lock data (as would be the case with some other
1454 transaction specifications) on becoming prepared, it is nevertheless in a state of doubt, and this
1455 doubt may have application or business implications. Accordingly it is recognised that a
1456 Participant (or, rather the business party controlling the Application Element and the Participant)
1457 may need to limit the promise made by sending PREPARED, and retain the right to apply its own
1458 decision to Confirm or Cancel to the Participant and the application effects it is responsible for.
1459 This is described as an “autonomous” decision. It is closely analogous to the heuristic decisions
1460 recognised in other transaction specifications. The only difference is the conceptual one that
1461 heuristic decisions are typically considered to occur only as a result of rare and unpredictable
1462 failure, whereas BTP recognises that the right to take an autonomous decision may be critical to
1463 the willingness of a business party to be involved in the Business Transaction at all. BTP
1464 therefore allows Participants (and all Inferiors) to indicate that there are limits on how long they
1465 are willing to promise to remain in the prepared state, and that after that time they may invoke
1466 their right of taking an autonomous decision.

1467 Taking an autonomous decision will of course run the risk of breaking the intended consistency of
1468 outcome across the Business Transaction, if the autonomous decision of the Inferior contradicts
1469 the decision (for this Inferior) made by the Superior. The Superior will have received the
1470 PREPARED message and thus be permitted to make a Confirm decision (directly, or through
1471 exchanges with a Terminator Application Element or with its own Superior). An Inferior taking an
1472 autonomous decision informs the Superior by sending CONFIRMED or CANCELLED, as
1473 appropriate, without waiting for an outcome order from the Superior. This may cross the outcome
1474 message from the Superior, or the Superior may not make its decision till later. If the decisions
1475 agree, the normal CONFIRM or CANCEL message is sent. In the case of CANCEL, this
1476 completes the relationship – the CANCEL and CANCELLED messages acknowledge each other,
1477 regardless of which travels first. In the case of CONFIRM, another CONFIRMED message is
1478 needed.

1479 If the Superior’s decision is contradicted by the autonomous decision, the Superior may need to
1480 record this, report it to management systems or inform the Terminator application or its own
1481 Superior. When this has been done (details are implementation-specific, but may be constrained
1482 by the application), the Superior sends a CONTRADICTION message to the Inferior. If an
1483 outcome message was sent earlier (crossing the announcement of the autonomous decision), the
1484 Inferior will already know there was a contradiction, but the receipt of the CONTRADICTION
1485 message informs the Inferior that the Superior knows and has done whatever it considers
1486 necessary to cope.

1487 As mentioned, BTP allows an Inferior to inform the Superior, with a qualifier on the PREPARED
1488 message, that the promise to remain in the prepared state will expire. In turn this allows the
1489 application on the Superior side to avoid risking a contradictory decision by making and sending
1490 its own decision in time. The Superior side can also indicate, with another qualifier, a minimum
1491 time for which it expects the prepared promise to remain valid.

1492 As well as deliberate and forewarned autonomous decisions, BTP recognises that failures and
1493 exceptional conditions may force unplanned autonomous decisions. In the protocol sequence

1494 these are treated exactly like planned autonomous decisions – if they contradict, the Superior will
1495 be informed and a CONTRADICTION message sent to the Inferior.

1496 Autonomous decisions, planned or unplanned, are equivalent to the heuristic decisions of other
1497 transaction systems. The term is avoided in BTP since it may carry implications that it only occurs
1498 in an unplanned manner.

1499 **3.4 Recovery and failure handling**

1500 **3.4.1 Types of failure**

1501 BTP is designed to ensure the delivery of a consistent decision for a Business Transaction to the
1502 parties involved, even in the event of failure. Failures can be classified as:

- 1503 • **Communication failure:** messages between BTP Actors are lost and not delivered. BTP
1504 assumes the Carrier Protocol ensures that messages are either delivered correctly (without
1505 corruption) or are lost, but does not assume that all losses are reported nor that messages
1506 sent separately are delivered in the order of sending.
- 1507 • **Network Node failure (system failure, site failure):** a machine hosting one or more BTP
1508 Actors stops processing and all its volatile data is lost. BTP assumes a site fails by stopping –
1509 it either operates correctly or not at all, it never operates incorrectly.

1510 Communication failure may become known to a BTP implementation by an indication from the
1511 lower layers or may be inferred (or suspected) by the expiry of a timeout. Recovery from a
1512 communication failure requires only that the two Actors can again send messages to each other
1513 and continue or complete the progress of the Business Transaction.

1514 A Network Node failure is distinguished from communication failure because there is loss of
1515 volatile state. To ensure consistent application of the decision of a Business Transaction, BTP
1516 requires that some state information will be persisted despite Network Node failure.
1517 Implementations choose, depending on application requirements, what real events correspond to
1518 Network Node failure but leave the persistent information undamaged; however, for most
1519 application uses, power failure should be survivable (an exception would be if the data
1520 manipulated by the associated operations was volatile). In all cases, there will be some level of
1521 event sufficiently catastrophic to lose persistent information and the ability to recover– destruction
1522 of the computer or bankruptcy of the organisation, for example.

1523 Recovery from Network Node failure involves recreating an accessible communications endpoint
1524 in a Network Node that has access to the persistent information for incomplete transactions. This
1525 may be a recreation of the original Actor using the same addresses; or using a different address;
1526 or there may be a distinct recovery entity, which can access the persistent data, but has a
1527 different address; other implementation approaches are possible. The recovered, and possibly
1528 relocated Actor may or may not be capable of performing new application work. Restoration of
1529 the Actor from persistent information will often result in a partial loss of state, relative to the
1530 volatile state reached before the failure. In some states, there may be total loss of knowledge of
1531 the Business Transaction, including particular Superior:Inferior relationships. After recovery from
1532 Network Node failure, the implementation behaves much as if a communication failure had
1533 occurred.

1534 **3.4.2 Persistent information**

1535 BTP **requires** that certain state information is persisted – these are information that records an
1536 Inferior's decision to be prepared, a Superior's decision to Confirm and an Inferior's autonomous
1537 decision . Requiring the first two to be persistent ensures that a consistent decision can be
1538 reached for the Business Transaction and that it is delivered to all involved BTP Nodes, despite
1539 failure. Requiring an Inferior's autonomous decision to be persistent allows BTP to ensure that, if
1540 the autonomous decision is contradictory (i.e. opposite to the decision at the Superior), the
1541 contradiction will be reported to the Superior, despite failures.

1542 BTP also permits, but does not require, recovery of the Superior:Inferior relationship in the active
1543 state (unlike many transaction protocols, where a communication or node failure in active state
1544 would invariably cause rollback of the transaction). Recovery in the active state may require that
1545 the application exchange is resynchronised as well – BTP does not directly support this, but
1546 allows continuation of the Business Transaction if the application desires it. Apart from the
1547 (optional) recovery in active state, BTP follows the well-known presume-abort model – it is only
1548 **required** that information be persisted when decisions are made (and not, for example, on
1549 enrolment). This means that on recovery one side may have persistent information while the
1550 other does not. This occurs, among other cases, when an Inferior has decided to be prepared but
1551 the Superior never confirmed (so the decision is “presumed” to be cancelled), and when the
1552 Superior did Confirm, the Inferior applied the confirmation and removed its persistent information
1553 but the acknowledgement message (CONFIRMED) was never received by the Superior.

1554 Information to be persisted when an Inferior decides to be prepared has to be sufficient to re-
1555 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a Confirm decision and to apply a Cancel
1556 decision. It will thus need to include the addressing and identification information for the Superior.
1557 The information needed to apply the Confirm or Cancel decision will depend on the application
1558 and the associated operations.

1559 A Superior must persist the corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication
1560 with the Inferior – that is the addressing and identification information for the Inferior. When it
1561 must persist this information depends on its position within the Transaction Tree. If it is the top of
1562 the tree – i.e. it is the Decider for the Business Transaction – it need only persist this information
1563 if and when it makes a decision to Confirm (and, for a Cohesion, only if this Inferior is in the
1564 Confirm-set). A Superior that is an intermediate in the tree – i.e. it is an Inferior to some other
1565 Superior – must persist the information about each of its own Inferiors as part of (or before)
1566 persisting its own decision to be prepared. For such an intermediate, the “decision to confirm” as
1567 Superior is made when either CONFIRM is received from its Superior or it makes an autonomous
1568 decision to Confirm. If CONFIRM is received, the persistent information may be changed to show
1569 the Confirm decision, but alternatively, the receipt of the CONFIRM can be treated as the
1570 decision itself and the CONFIRM message propagated to the Inferiors without changing the
1571 persistent information. If the persistent information is left unchanged and there is a node failure,
1572 on recovery the entity (as an Inferior) will be in a prepared state, and will rediscover the Confirm
1573 decision (using the recovery exchanges to its Superior) before propagating it to its Inferior(s).

1574 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, and the BTP messages may be
1575 repeated if they are lost in transit (see next section), the persistent information may need to
1576 include sufficient information to recreate the qualifiers, to allow them to be resent with their
1577 carrying BTP message. This applies both to qualifiers on PREPARED (which would be persisted
1578 by the Inferior) and on CONFIRM (which would be persisted by the Superior).

1579 In some cases, an implementation may not need to make an active change to have a persistent
1580 record of a decision, provided that the implementation will restore itself to the appropriate state on
1581 recovery. For example, an implementation that, as Inferior, always used the default-is-cancel
1582 mechanism, and recorded the timeout (to Cancel) in the persistent information on becoming
1583 prepared, and always updated or removed that record when it applied a Confirm instruction could
1584 treat the presence of an expired record as effectively a record of an autonomous Cancel decision.

1585 **3.4.3 Recovery messages**

1586 Once the Superior:Inferior relationship has entered the completion phase, BTP does not generally
1587 use special messages in recovery, but merely permits the resending of the previous message.
1588 Thus, for example, PREPARE, PREPARED, CANCEL, CONFIRM can all be sent repeatedly.
1589 Resending the previous message means a possible loss of the original message may be invisible
1590 to the receiver. The trigger for this re-sending is implementation dependent – a reported
1591 communication failure, a timeout expiry while waiting for a reply, the re-establishment of
1592 communications or the general restoration of function after a node failure are all possible triggers.
1593 An incoming repetition of the last message received, if it has already been replied to (e.g.

1594 receiving PREPARE after PREPARED has been sent), should normally trigger a resending of the
1595 last message sent – since that sent message may have got lost.⁴

1596 While in the active phase – i.e. prior to entering completion – there is no appropriate last
1597 message that can be sent. However, for active-phase recovery there needs to be some way for
1598 the BTP Actors to determine that the Peer is still there and still aware of the Superior:Inferior
1599 relationship. In this case, the peers can interrogate each other using the INFERIOR_STATE or
1600 SUPERIOR_STATE messages, informing the Peer of their own state and requesting a response
1601 – which may be the opposite message, or one of the main BTP messages (which perhaps had
1602 been lost). If it is another SUP|INFERIOR_STATE message, that reply does not ask for a
1603 response. Receiving a SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages that asks for a response does not
1604 require an immediate response. Especially if an implementation is waiting to determine a decision
1605 (perhaps because it is itself waiting for a decision from elsewhere), an implementation may
1606 choose not to reply until it wishes too. Alternatively, it can reply with a SUP|INFERIOR)STATE
1607 message with a status showing that the message has been received but the definitive reply is not
1608 yet available. This may be particularly useful in long-lived business transactions, where the time
1609 for a decision to be made may be much longer than a reasonable retry time.

1610 The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also used as replies when the receiver of **any** of the
1611 Superior:Inferior message has determined that there is no corresponding state information – the
1612 targeted Superior or Inferior does not exist (or is known to have completed and is no longer an
1613 active entity). The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages with a status of “unknown” is the indication
1614 that the state information does not exist.

1615 The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also available as replies to any Superior:Inferior
1616 message in the (transient, one hopes) case where, after failure, an implementation cannot
1617 currently determine whether the persistent information exists or not, or what its state is, and so
1618 cannot give a definitive answer. A SUP|INFERIOR_STATE message with a status of
1619 “inaccessible” indicates that the existence of state information cannot be determined. The
1620 receiver of such a message should normally treat it as a “retry later” suggestion.

1621 **3.4.4 Redirection**

1622 As described above, BTP uses the presume-abort model for recovery. A corollary of this is that
1623 there are cases where one side will attempt to re-establish communication when there is no
1624 persistent information for the relationship at the far-end, because that side either never reached a
1625 state where the state was persisted, or had been persisted, but then progressed to remove the
1626 state information. In such cases, it is important the side that is attempting recovery can
1627 distinguish between unsuccessful attempts to connect to the holder of the persistent information
1628 and when the information no longer exists. If the Peer information does not exist, the side that is
1629 attempting recovery can draw appropriate conclusions (that the Peer either was never prepared,
1630 never confirmed or has already completed) and complete its part of the transaction; if it merely
1631 fails to get through, it is stuck in attempting recovery.

1632 Two mechanisms are provided to assist implementation flexibility while allowing completion of
1633 Superior:Inferior relationships when only one side has any persistent information. The
1634 mechanisms are:

- 1635 • Address fields which provide the address that will be used by the Peer to send messages to
1636 an Actor (effectively a “callback address”) can be a set of addresses, which are alternatives,
1637 one of which is chosen as the target address for the future message. If the sender of that
1638 message finds the address does not work, it can try a different alternative.

⁴ BTP’s capability of binding to alternative carrier protocols is part of the motivation for not having a distinct recovery message sequence, since the carrier binding does not necessarily have a well-defined communication failure indication.

1639 • The REDIRECT message can be used to inform the Peer that an address previously given is
1640 no longer valid and to supply a replacement address (or set of addresses). REDIRECT can
1641 be issued either as a response to receipt of a message or spontaneously.

1642 The two mechanisms can be used in combination, with one or more of the original set of
1643 addresses just being a redirector, which does not itself ever have direct access to the state
1644 information for the transaction, but will respond to any message with an appropriate REDIRECT.

1645 REDIRECT as a message is only used on the Superior:Inferior relationship, where each side
1646 holds the address of the other. On the other relationships (e.g. Terminator:Decider), one side
1647 (e.g. Terminator) has the address of the other, and initiates all the message exchanges.
1648 However, the entity whose address is known to the other may itself move - e.g. if a Coordinator,
1649 which will be both Decider and Superior changes its address as a Superior, it will probably
1650 change its address as a Decider too. In this case, a FAULT reply to a misdirected message can
1651 be used, assuming there is some entity available at, or on the path to the old address that
1652 understands BTP sufficiently to provide the redirection information.

1653 Some implementations, in which a single addressable entity with one constant address deals with
1654 all transactions, distinguishing them by identifier, will not need to supply "backup" addresses (and
1655 would only use REDIRECT if permanently migrated).

1656 **3.4.5 Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit**

1657 BTP does not provide facilities or impose requirements on the recovery of Terminator:Decider
1658 relationships, other than allowing messages to be repeated. A Terminator may survive failures
1659 (by retaining knowledge of the Decider's address and identifier), but this is an implementation
1660 option. Although a Decider (if it decides to Confirm) will persist information about the Confirm
1661 decision, it is not required, after failure, to remain accessible using the address it originally gave
1662 to the Initiator (and used by the Terminator). Any such recovery is an implementation option.

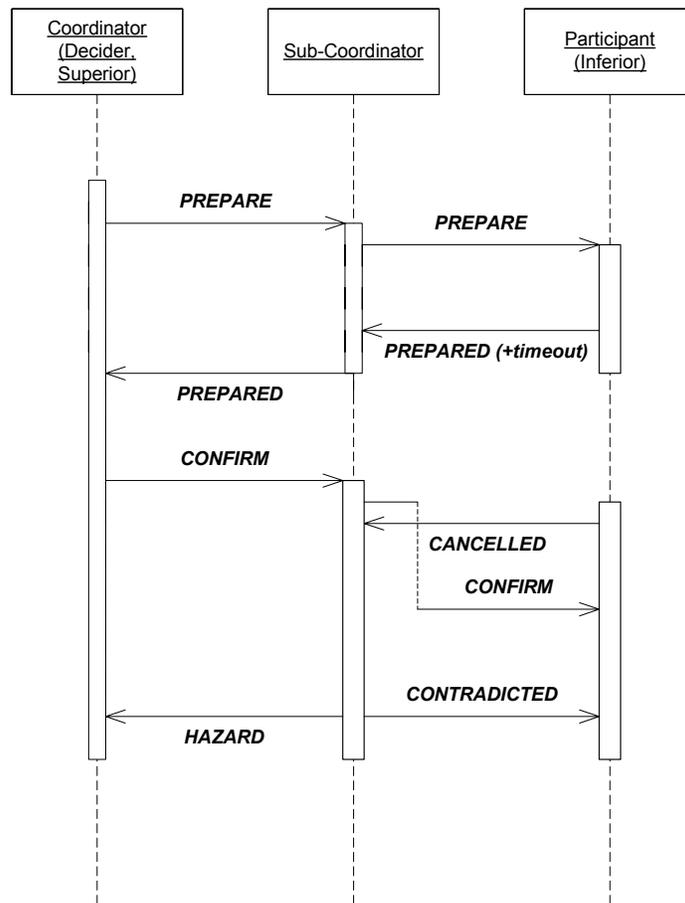
1663 A Decider has no way of initiating a call to a Terminator to ensure that it is still active, and thus no
1664 way of detecting that a Terminator has failed. The Decider always has the right to initiate
1665 cancellation, but if the application (Terminator) and the Decider have different views about how
1666 long a "long time" is, then either the Decider might wait unnecessarily for a completion request
1667 (e.g. CONFIRM_TRANSACTION) that will never arrive, or it might initiate cancellation while the
1668 application is still active. To avoid these irritations, a standard qualifier "Transaction timelimit" can
1669 be used (by the Initiator) to inform the Decider when it can assume the Terminator will not request
1670 confirmation and so it (the Decider) should initiate cancellation.

1671 **3.4.6 Contradictions and hazard**

1672 As described above (see "3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions"), in
1673 some circumstances an Inferior may apply a decision that is contradictory to the decision of the
1674 Superior. This can occur in a semi-planned manner, when the Inferior has announced a timeout
1675 on the PREPARED message but no outcome message has been received, or as a result of an
1676 exceptional condition that forces the Inferior to break the promise implicit in PREPARED,
1677 regardless of timers. In both cases, this is considered an autonomous decision by the Inferior. An
1678 autonomous decision, of itself, does not imply a contradiction – it only results in a contradiction if
1679 the decision is opposite to that of the Superior (in the case of a cohesive Superior, opposite to the
1680 decision that applies to this Inferior).

1681 In order to ensure that a contradiction is detected despite node and communication failures, it is
1682 required that information about the taking of the autonomous decision be persisted until a BTP
1683 message received from the Superior indicates either that there was no contradiction (the
1684 decisions were in line – CANCEL is received after an autonomous Cancel or CONFIRM is
1685 received after an autonomous Confirm) or that the Superior is aware of the contradiction
1686 (CONTRADICTION is received). Note that the Inferior will become aware of the fact of the
1687 contradiction when it receives the "wrong" message, but must retain the record of its own decision
1688 until it receives the CONTRADICTION message, which tells it the Superior knows too.

1689 The Superior's action on becoming aware of the contradiction is not determined by this
 1690 specification. In particular, if the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it is not required
 1691 by this specification to report the contradiction to its own Superior (which may, for example, be
 1692 controlled by a different organisation). The Superior may report the problem to management
 1693 systems or record it for manual repair. However, BTP does provide mechanisms to report the
 1694 contradiction to the next higher Superior (if there is one) or to the Terminator Application Element.
 1695 A contradiction occurring in an Inferior will usually mean the immediate Superior has a "mixed"
 1696 condition – some of the application work it was responsible for has confirmed, some has
 1697 cancelled (and contrary to any Cohesion Confirm-set selection). If the Superior is a Sub-
 1698 coordinator or Sub-composer, it can report the mixed condition to its own Superior with the
 1699 HAZARD message. If the Superior is the top-most in the tree, it can report the problem with the
 1700 INFERIOR_STATUSES message, which will detail the state of all the Inferiors. Figure 17 shows a
 1701 message sequence in a Transaction Tree with two levels. The Participant makes an autonomous
 1702 Cancel decision, but the Coordinator decides to Confirm. The Confirm decision from the
 1703 Coordinator, passed on by the Sub-coordinator, crosses with the CANCELLED message from the
 1704 Participant. The Participant waits for the CANCELLED from the Sub-coordinator, which chooses
 1705 to report the problem with HAZARD to the Coordinator.



1706
 1707 *Figure 17 Message sequence showing contradiction, reported with HAZARD*

1708 If a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, having sent (or attempted to send) the outcome message
 1709 to its Inferiors, is temporarily unable to get a response (**CONFIRMED** or **CANCELLED**), it may
 1710 either wait until a response does come back or choose to reply to its own Superior with a
 1711 **HAZARD** message indicating that a contradiction is "possible". If it does choose to send
 1712 **HAZARD**, it is required to persist a record of this until it receives a **CONTRADICTION** message
 1713 from the Superior, or a message from the Inferior indicating there was no contradiction in fact.

1714 HAZARD is also used to indicate that it has become impossible to cleanly and consistently
1715 achieve either a confirmed or a cancelled state for the application work. In this case, there is can
1716 be no guarantee that the problem will be reliably reported – especially because it may be the
1717 inability to persist information that is the cause of the problem.

1718 **3.5 Relation of BTP to application and Carrier Protocols**

1719 BTP messages are communicated between Actors in two distinguishable circumstances:

- 1720 a) in establishing and progressing the outcome and Control Relationships between BTP
1721 Actors, and between Application Elements and BTP Actors – Initiator:Factory,
1722 Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior etc.
- 1723 b) in association with Application Messages that are communicated between Application
1724 Elements.

1725 In the first case, interoperable communication requires a specification of how the abstract BTP
1726 messages are represented and encoded, and how they are transmitted. This specification is a
1727 **carrier protocol binding** (or just “binding”, if the context is clear). BTP allows bindings to a
1728 multiplicity of Carrier Protocols. The only requirement that BTP makes is that the transmission of
1729 a message either delivers an uncorrupted message or fails. BTP does not require that the carrier
1730 report failure to deliver a message, to either side, nor that messages are delivered in the order
1731 they are sent (though implementations can take advantage of information from a richer carrier,
1732 which can improve performance in various ways). BTP messages communicated in this way have
1733 semantics that are defined in this specification – a PREPARE message (for example), refers back
1734 to the ENROL via the “inferior-identifier” parameter and is an instruction to the Inferior to become
1735 and report that it is prepared.

1736 In the second case, the full semantics cannot be defined in this specification. Interoperation with
1737 BTP requires that the parties have a common understanding of what is being confirmed or
1738 cancelled, but this mutual understanding is defined by the Contract of the application, not by BTP.
1739 (The Contract may be explicit or implicit, declared by one side as take-it-or-leave-it, or may be
1740 negotiated in some way.) Part of this Contract will include how the combination of the Application
1741 Protocol (i.e. the Application Messages and their sequencing) and BTP operate such that the two
1742 sides are agreed as to which Application Operations are part of which Business Transaction. This
1743 will often be achieved by sending Application Messages and BTP messages in “association” in
1744 some way – thus an Application Message sent in association with a CONTEXT can be specified
1745 (by the application Contract) to mean that if work is done as result of the receipt of the message,
1746 one or more Inferiors should be enrolled to apply the Confirm/Cancel decision to that work.
1747 Similarly, an Application Message may be sent associated with an ENROL with the contractual
1748 understanding that the message refers to some application work that has been made the
1749 responsibility of the Inferior being enrolled.

1750 The concrete representation of this “association” is also a matter for the Application Protocol
1751 specification. There are several ways this can be done, including:

- 1752 • the BTP message is contained within the Application Message, or both are contained within a
1753 larger construct;
- 1754 • the Application Message contains a field that is the superior-identifier or inferior-identifier that
1755 is also present on the CONTEXT or the ENROL
- 1756 • the BTP message contains a qualifier that references (a field of) the Application Message in
1757 some way (e.g. if the Application Message is an invoice, the qualifier might contain the
1758 invoice number)
- 1759 • the encoding of the BTP and Application Messages reference each other (e.g. using XML id
1760 and refid attributes)

1761 In all cases, the application specification⁵ will need to define the mechanism so that both parties
1762 have common understanding. Many applications will use the same mechanism and their
1763 specifications can therefore take advantage of standard patterns, and their implementations of
1764 standard tools.

1765 The association of an Application Message with a BTP message is analogous to the concept of
1766 “related” BTP messages. “Related” BTP messages are sent as a group, with a declared and
1767 defined semantic for the group. Associated application and BTP messages can be considered as
1768 “related”, with the proviso that the semantic is defined by the application, not by BTP.

1769 There is no necessary relationship between how the Application Messages and any associated
1770 BTP messages are transmitted by Carrier Protocols, and the carrier binding for the BTP
1771 messages. BTP messages are invariably sent to a BTP Actor whose address has been passed to
1772 the sender by some means – thus a CONTEXT contains the address of the Superior to which
1773 ENROLs will be sent, and the ENROL contains the address of the Inferior. Similarly, BEGUN
1774 contains the address (as Decider) of the new Composer or Coordinator. These addresses are all
1775 sets of addresses (possibly of cardinality one), and each individual address identifies which
1776 binding is to be used. Thus, for example, when a CONTEXT is sent associated with an
1777 Application Message, the ENROL will travel on a carrier binding identified by the particular
1778 address from the CONTEXT that the Enroller chooses to use – which may have no relationship to
1779 how the Application Message arrived.

1780 Despite this, it will be common that the application binding and the BTP binding will use the same
1781 carrier. This is the case in the bindings specified in this edition of the specification, which define a
1782 binding of BTP to SOAP 1.1 over HTTP. Included in this SOAP/HTTP binding specification, are
1783 rules that allow an application to associate (relate) a single CONTEXT or a single ENROL
1784 (carried in the SOAP header) with the Application Message(s) carried in the SOAP body.

1785 **3.6 Other elements**

1786 **3.6.1 Identifiers**

1787 An Identifier is a globally unambiguous identification of the state corresponding to one of Decider,
1788 Superior or Inferior. Where a single entity has more than one of these roles (at the same BTP
1789 Node in the same transaction, as with a Sub-coordinator that is both Superior and Inferior), the
1790 Identifiers may be the same or different, at implementation option - they are distinguished by
1791 which messages the Identifier is used on. (A Superior has only one Superior-identifier, although it
1792 may be in multiple Superior:Inferior relationships, each with a separate state in terms of the state
1793 table).

1794 The state identified by an Identifier can be accessed by BTP messages sent to any of the
1795 addresses supplied with the Identifier in the appropriate message (CONTEXT, BEGUN, ENROL),
1796 or as updated by REDIRECT. An Identifier itself has no location implications. (Identifiers are
1797 specified, in the XML representation, as syntactically URIs - by their use as names of BTP
1798 entities, they are URNs. If an Identifier happens to specify a network location (i.e. it is a URL), it is
1799 treated as an opaque value by BTP)

1800 Identifiers are specified as being globally unambiguous - the same Identifier only ever identifies
1801 one Decider, Superior or Inferior over all systems and all time. In practice, an Identifier could be
1802 re-used if there is no possibility of the colliding values being confused. However implementations
1803 are recommended to use truly unambiguous Identifiers (that is to use them as URNs).

⁵ The “application specification” or “application protocol specification” may be very informal or may be a standardised agreement.

1804 3.6.2 Addresses

1805 In most cases, BTP Actors that need to communicate are informed of each others addresses
1806 from received BTP messages. When an Inferior is to be enrolled, a CONTEXT message which
1807 contains the address of the Superior will have been received or otherwise passed to the Enroller
1808 and the Inferior. The ENROL message received by the Superior contains the address of the
1809 Inferior. The BEGUN returned from a Factory to the Initiator contains the address of the Decider,
1810 and this can be passed to the Terminator or any **Status Requestor**.

1811 The addresses carried in these messages (which are effectively “call-back” addresses, to be used
1812 as the destination of future messages) are sets of tripartite addresses. Each contains:

- 1813 • an identifier (binding name) for the binding to an underlying transport, or Carrier Protocol;
- 1814 • a “binding address”, in a format specific to the carrier which is the information necessary to
1815 connect using that carrier;
- 1816 • an optional additional information field.

1817 The optional additional information is opaque to all but the future destination (which also created
1818 this address for itself) and is used however the implementation there wishes (e.g. it can be used
1819 to distinguish a particular program object, or to relay on, perhaps over a different protocol). The
1820 multiple members of the set allow support of multiple carrier bindings (including both different
1821 versions of standard bindings and proprietary bindings) and for relocation of the BTP Actor.

1822 When a message is actually to be sent, the sender, possessing the set of addresses for the
1823 destination, chooses one - restricting its choice to bindings that it supports obviously, but not
1824 otherwise constrained by the specification. The binding address will be used by the sender's
1825 carrier implementation (depending on the protocol, the address may or may not be transmitted –
1826 with http, for example, it is), The additional information, if present, will be included in the BTP
1827 message. The chosen address is considered the “target-address” when considering the abstract
1828 message, but only the additional information will normally appear within the encoded BTP-
1829 message (the encoding used is part of the binding specification, which could require that all of the
1830 address is (redundantly) transmitted, if the specifier so chose).

1831 Where a BTP message invokes a reply – as with the Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider and
1832 Status Requestor:various roles – the receiver (Factory, Decider, etc) of the message will not
1833 know *a priori* the address of the sender. Accordingly, in these cases the abstract messages are
1834 specified as containing a single “reply-address”. Depending on the binding, and the particular use
1835 of the binding, the “reply-address” may be directly represented in the encoding of the BTP
1836 message, or may be implicit in the Carrier Protocol. Similar considerations apply in the
1837 Superior:Inferior relationship where, although the addresses are normally known by the other
1838 side, there are cases when a message is received and must be responded to, but the Peer is
1839 unknown. Accordingly, the Superior:Inferior messages contain (in abstract) a single “senders-
1840 address” and the identifier of the sender. As with the “reply-address”es, the “senders-address”
1841 may be implicit in the Carrier Protocol.

1842 The CONTEXT message does not contain a “target-address”, even as an abstract message, as it
1843 is never transmitted between BTP Actors on its own – it is always either related to a BTP BEGIN
1844 or BEGUN message, or is passed between Application Elements with some (application-detailed)
1845 association with Application Messages.

1846 3.6.3 Qualifiers

1847 Qualifiers are elements of the BTP messages used to exchange additional information between
1848 the Actors. Qualifiers can be specified in the BTP specification (“standard qualifiers”), by industry
1849 groups, by BTP implementors or for the purposes of particular applications. Of the standard
1850 qualifiers in this version of the specification some are constraints on the BTP Contract, such as
1851 time limits, and some are further identifiers used to distinguish specific parties in the BTP
1852 interchange. Non-standard qualifiers could extend the protocol or carry application-specific
1853 information.

1854 **3.6.4 Lists**

1855 Where a parameter of a message represents a list of inferiors (e.g. the inferiors-list and targetted-
1856 qualifiers-list parameters of several messages), each inferior SHOULD only be represented once.
1857 There is no specified behaviour for an implementation that receives such a parameter with one or
1858 more inferiors represented more than once (implementations are free to ignore the duplicate or to
1859 return a FAULT).

4 Actors, Roles and Relationships

1862 Actors are software agents which process computations. BTP Actors are addressable for the
1863 purposes of receiving application and BTP protocol messages transmitted over some underlying
1864 communications or carrier protocol. (See section 5.1 “Addresses” for more detail.)

1865 BTP Actors play roles in the sending, receiving and processing of messages. These roles are
1866 associated with responsibilities or obligations under the terms of software contracts defined by
1867 this specification. (These contracts are stated formally in sections 5 “Abstract Messages and
1868 Associated Contracts” and 6 “State Tables”.) A BTP Actor’s computations put the contracts into
1869 effect.

1870 A Role is defined and described in terms of a single Business Transaction. An implementation
1871 supporting a Role may, as an addressable entity, play the same Role in multiple Business
1872 Transactions, simultaneously or consecutively, or a separate addressable entity may be created
1873 for each transaction. This is a choice for the implementer, and the addressing mechanisms allow
1874 interoperation between implementations that make different choices.

1875 Within a single transaction, one Actor may play several roles, or each Role may be assigned to a
1876 distinct Actor. This is again a choice for the implementer. An Actor playing a Role is termed an
1877 “actor-in-role”.

1878 Actors may interoperate, in the sense that the roles played by Actors may be implemented using
1879 software created by different vendors for each actor-in-role. The section 10 “Conformance”, gives
1880 guidelines on the groups of roles that may be implemented in a partial, interoperable
1881 implementation of BTP.

1882 The descriptions of the roles concentrate on the normal progression of a Business Transaction,
1883 and some of the more important divergences from this. They do not cover all exception cases –
1884 the message set definition and the state tables provide a more comprehensive specification.

1885 *Note – A BTP Role is approximately equivalent to an interface in some distributed*
1886 *computing mechanisms, or a port-type in WSDL. The definition of a Role includes*
1887 *behaviour.*

4.1 Relationships

1889 There are two primary relationships in BTP.

- 1890 • Between an Application Element that determines that a Business Transaction should be
1891 completed (the Role of Terminator) and the BTP Actor at the top of the Transaction Tree (the
1892 Role of Decider);
- 1893 • Between BTP Actors within the tree, where one (the Superior) will inform the other (the
1894 Inferior) what the outcome decision is.

1895 These primary relationships are involved in arriving at a decision on the outcome of a Business
1896 Transaction, and propagating that decision to all parties to the transaction. Taking the path that is
1897 followed when a Business Transaction is confirmed:

- 1898 a) The Terminator determines that the Business Transaction should Confirm, if it can; or (for
1899 a Cohesion), which parts should Confirm
- 1900 b) The Terminator asks the Decider to apply the desired outcome to the tree, if it can
1901 guarantee the consistency of the Confirm decision
- 1902 c) The Decider, which is Superior to one or more Inferiors, asks its Inferiors if they can
1903 agree to a Confirm decision (for a Cohesion, this may not be all the Inferiors)

- 1904 d) If any of those Inferiors are also Superiors, they ask their Inferiors and so on down the
1905 tree
- 1906 e) Inferiors that are not Superiors report if they can agree to a Confirm to their Superior
- 1907 f) Inferiors that are also Superiors report their agreement only if they received such
1908 agreement from their Inferiors, and can agree themselves
- 1909 g) Eventually agreement (or not) is reported to the Decider. If all have agreed, the Decider
1910 makes and persists the Confirm decision (hence the term “Decider” – it decides,
1911 everything else just asked); if any have disagreed, or if the Confirm decision cannot be
1912 persisted, a Cancel decision is made
- 1913 h) The Decider, as Superior tells its Inferiors of the outcome
- 1914 i) Inferiors that are also Superiors tell their Inferiors, recursively down the tree
- 1915 j) The Decider replies to the Terminator’s request to Confirm, reporting the outcome
1916 decision

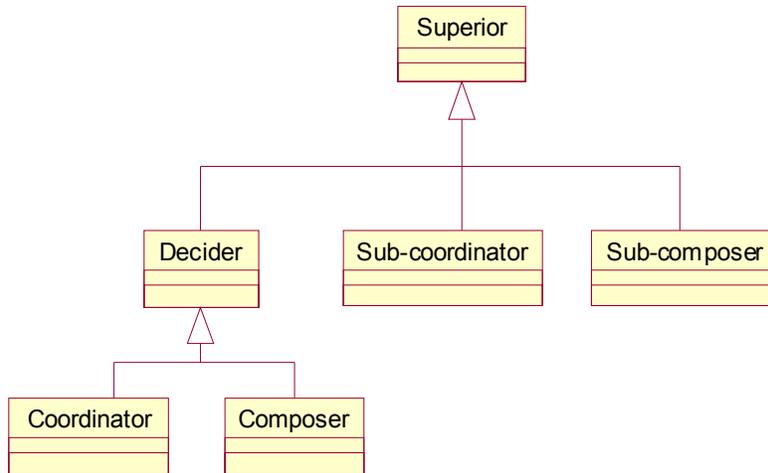
1917 There are other relationships that are secondary to Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior, mostly
1918 involved in the establishment of the primary relationships. The various particular relationships can
1919 be grouped as the “control” relationships – primarily Terminator:Decider, but also Initiator:Factory;
1920 and the “outcome” relationships – primarily Superior:Inferior, but also Enroller:Superior.

1921 The two groups of relationships are linked in that a Decider is a Superior to one or more Inferiors.
1922 There are also similarities in the semantics of some of the exchanges (messages) within the
1923 relationships. However they differ in that

- 1924 • All exchanges between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator (it is
1925 essentially a request/response relationship); either of Superior or Inferior may initiate
1926 messages to the other
- 1927 • The Superior:Inferior relationship is recoverable – depending on the progress of the
1928 relationship, the two sides will re-establish their shared state after failure; the
1929 Terminator:Decider relationship is not recoverable. The nature of the Superior:Inferior
1930 relationship requires that the two parties know of each other’s addresses from when the
1931 relationship is established; the Decider does not need to know the address of the Terminator
1932 (provided it has some way of returning the response to a received message).

1933 4.2 Roles

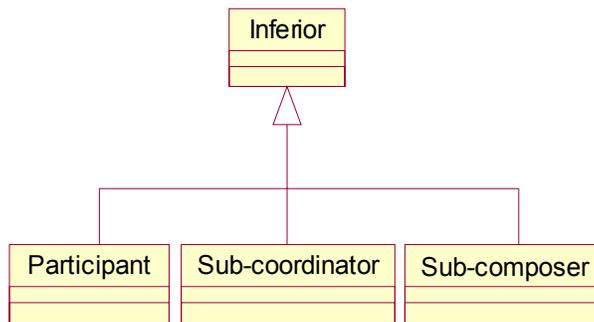
1934 Figure 18 and Figure 19 -- show the BTP roles that are specialisations of the central Superior and
1935 Inferior roles.



1936

1937

Figure 18 -- Superior and derived roles



1938

1939

Figure 19 -- Inferior and derived roles

1940

1941

1942

1943

In the following sections, the responsibility of each Role is defined, and the messages that are sent or received by that Role are listed. Note that some roles exist only to have a name for an Actor that issues a message and receives a reply to that message. Some of these roles may be played by several Actors in the course of a single Business Transaction.

1944

1945

1946

For each Role, a table shows which messages are received and sent. Where the messages appear on the same line, the second is a reply to the first. (Consequently the columns are sometimes sent first, received second, sometimes vice versa.)

1947

4.3 Roles involved in the Outcome Relationships

1948

4.3.1 Superior

1949

1950

1951

1952

1953

1954

1955

1956

Accepts enrolments of Inferiors from Enrollers, establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship with each. In cooperation with other Actors and constrained by the messages exchanged with the Inferior, the Superior determines the **Outcome** applicable to the Inferior and informs the Inferior by sending CONFIRM or CANCEL. This outcome can be Confirm only if a PREPARED message is received from the Inferior, and if a record, identifying the Inferior can be persisted. (Whether this record is also a record of a Confirm decision depends on the Superior's position in the Business Transaction as a whole.) The Superior must retain this persistent record until it receives a CONFIRMED (or, in exceptional cases, CANCELLED or HAZARD) from the Inferior.

1957

1958

A Superior may delegate the taking of the Confirm or Cancel decision to an Inferior, if there is only one Inferior, by sending CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.

1959 A Superior may be *Atomic* or *Cohesive*; an Atomic Superior will apply the same decision to all of
 1960 its Inferiors; a Cohesive Superior may apply Confirm to some Inferiors and Cancel to others, or
 1961 may Confirm some after others have reported cancellation. The set of Inferiors that the Superior
 1962 confirms (or attempts to Confirm) is called the “Confirm-set”.
 1963 If RESIGN is received from an Inferior, the Superior:Inferior relationship is ended; the Inferior has
 1964 no further effect on the behaviour of the Superior as a whole.

Superior receives	Superior sends
ENROL	ENROLLED
	PREPARE
	CONFIRM
	CANCEL
	RESIGNED
	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE
	CONTRADICTION
	SUPERIOR_STATE
PREPARED	
CONFIRMED	
CANCELLED	
HAZARD	
RESIGN	
INFERIOR_STATE	
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1965
 1966 Receipt of ENROL establishes a new Superior:Inferior relationship (unless the ENROL is a
 1967 duplicate). ENROLLED is sent only if a reply is asked for on the ENROL.

1968 4.3.2 Inferior

1969 Responsible for applying the Outcome to some set of associated operations – the application
 1970 determines which operations are the responsibility of a particular Inferior.

1971 An Inferior is **Enrolled** with a single Superior (hereafter referred to as “its Superior”), establishing
 1972 a Superior:Inferior relationship. If the Inferior is able to ensure that either a Confirm or Cancel
 1973 decision can be applied to the associated operations, and can persist information to retain that
 1974 condition, it sends a PREPARED message to the Superior. When the Outcome is received from
 1975 the Superior, the Inferior applies it, deletes the persistent information, and replies with
 1976 CANCELLED or CONFIRMED as appropriate.

1977 If an Inferior is unable to come to a prepared state, it cancels the associated operations and
 1978 informs the Superior with a CANCELLED message. If it is unable to either come to a prepared
 1979 state, or to Cancel the associated operations, it informs the Superior with a HAZARD message.

1980 An Inferior that has Become Prepared may, exceptionally, make an autonomous decision to be
 1981 applied to the associated operations, without waiting for the Outcome from the Superior. It is
 1982 required to persist this autonomous decision and report it to the Superior with CONFIRMED or
 1983 CANCELLED as appropriate. If, when CONFIRM or CANCEL is received, the autonomous
 1984 decision and the decision received from the Superior are contradictory, the Inferior must retain
 1985 the record of the autonomous decision until receiving a CONTRADICTION message.

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
PREPARE	
CONFIRM	
CANCEL	
RESIGNED	

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	
CONTRADICTION	
SUPERIOR_STATE	
	PREPARED
	CONFIRMED
	CANCELLED
	HAZARD
	RESIGN
	INFERIOR_STATE
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1986

1987 4.3.3 Enroller

1988 Causes the enrolment of an Inferior with a Superior. This Role is distinguished because in some
 1989 implementations the enrolment request will be performed by the application, in some the
 1990 application will ask the Actor that will play the Role of Inferior to enrol itself, and a Factory may
 1991 enrol a new Inferior (which will also be Superior) as a result of receiving BEGIN&CONTEXT.

Enroller sends	Enroller receives
ENROL	ENROLLER

1992

1993 ENROLLED is received only if the Enroller asked for a response when the ENROL was sent.

1994 An ENROL message sent from an Enroller that did not require an ENROLLED response may be
 1995 modified *en route* to the Superior by an intermediate Actor to ask for an ENROLLED response to
 1996 be sent to the intermediate. (This may occur in the “one-shot” scenario, where an ENROL/no-rsp-
 1997 req is received in relation to a CONTEXT_REPLY/related; the receiver of the CONTEXT_REPLY
 1998 will need to ensure the enrolment is successful).

1999 4.3.4 Participant

2000 An Inferior which is specialized for the purposes of an application. Some Application Operations
 2001 are associated directly with the Participant, which is responsible for determining whether a
 2002 prepared condition is possible for them, and for applying the outcome (“associated directly” as
 2003 opposed to involving another BTP Superior:Inferior relationship, in which this Actor is the
 2004 Superior).

2005 The associated operations may be performed by the Actor that has the Role of Participant, or
 2006 they may be performed by another Actor, and only the Confirm/Cancel application is performed
 2007 by the Participant.

2008 In either case, the Participant, as part of becoming prepared (i.e. before it can send PREPARED
 2009 to the Superior), will persist information allowing it apply a Confirm decision to the operations and
 2010 to apply a Cancel decision. The nature of this information depends on the operations.

2011 *Note – Possible approaches include:*

- 2012 • *The operations may be performed completely and the Participant persists information*
 2013 *to perform Counter-effect operations (compensating operations) to apply*
 2014 *cancellation;*
- 2015 • *The operations may be just checked and not performed at all; the Participant persists*
 2016 *information to perform them to apply confirmation;*

- 2017 • *The Participant persists the prior state of data affected by the operations and the*
 - 2018 *operations are performed; the Participant restores the prior state to apply*
 - 2019 *cancellation;*
 - 2020 • *As the previous, but other access to the affected data is forbidden until the decision is*
 - 2021 *known*
 - 2022 • *The operations are performed completely, with the changes made accessible but*
 - 2023 *marked as provisional; if confirmed, the provisional marking is removed; if cancelled,*
 - 2024 *they are deleted or marked as cancelled.*
- 2025 Since a Participant is an Inferior, it sends and receives the messages for an Inferior.

2026 **4.3.5 Sub-coordinator**

- 2027 An Inferior which is also an Atomic Superior.
- 2028 A sub-coordinator is the Inferior in one Superior:Inferior relationship and the Superior in one or
- 2029 more Superior:Inferior relationships.
- 2030 From the perspective of its Superior (the one the sub-coordinator is Inferior to), there is no
- 2031 difference between a sub-coordinator and any other Inferior. From this perspective, the
- 2032 “associated operations” of the sub-coordinator as an Inferior include the relationships with its
- 2033 Inferiors.
- 2034 A sub-coordinator does not Become Prepared (and send PREPARED to its Superior) until and
- 2035 unless it has received PREPARED (or RESIGN) from all its Inferiors. The outcome is propagated
- 2036 to all Inferiors.
- 2037 Since a Sub-coordinator is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages
- 2038 for both.

2039 **4.3.6 Sub-composer**

- 2040 An Inferior which is also a Cohesive Superior.
- 2041 Like a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer cannot be distinguished from any other Inferior from the
- 2042 perspective of its Superior.
- 2043 A sub-composer is similar to a sub-coordinator, except that the constraints linking the different
- 2044 Inferiors concern only those Inferiors in the Confirm-set. How the Confirm-set is controlled, and
- 2045 when, is not defined in this specification.
- 2046 If the sub-composer is instructed to Cancel, by receiving a CANCEL message from its Superior,
- 2047 the cancellation is propagated to all its Inferiors.
- 2048 Since a Sub-composer is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for
- 2049 both.

2050 **4.4 Roles involved in the Control Relationships**

2051 **4.4.1 Decider**

- 2052 A Superior that is not also the Inferior on a Superior:Inferior relationship. It is the top BTP node in
- 2053 the Transaction Tree and receives requests from a Terminator as to the desired outcome for the
- 2054 Business Transaction. If the Terminator asks the Decider to Confirm the Business Transaction, it
- 2055 is the responsibility of the Decider to finally take the Confirm decision. The taking of the decision
- 2056 is synonymous with the persisting of information identifying the Inferiors that are to be confirmed.
- 2057 An Inferior cannot be confirmed unless PREPARED has been received from it.
- 2058 A Decider is instructed to Cancel by receiving CANCEL_TRANSACTION.
- 2059 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior (all Inferiors will have the same outcome) is a Coordinator. A
- 2060 Decider that is a Cohesive Superior (some Inferiors may Cancel, some Confirm) is a Composer.

Decider receives	Decider sends
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2061

2062 A Decider is also a Superior and thus sends and receives the messages for a Superior.

2063 **4.4.2 Coordinator**

2064 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior. The same outcome decision will be applied to all Inferiors
2065 (excluding any from which RESIGN is received).

2066 PREPARED must be received from all remaining Inferiors for a Confirm decision to be taken.

2067 A Coordinator must make a Cancel decision if

- 2068 • it is instructed to Cancel by the Terminator
- 2069 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior
- 2070 • if it is unable to persist a Confirm decision

2071 Since a Coordinator is a Decider, it receives the messages appropriate for a Decider and a
2072 Superior.

2073 **4.4.3 Composer**

2074 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior. If the Terminator requests confirmation of the Cohesion,
2075 that request will determine the Confirm-set of the Cohesion.

2076 PREPARED must be received from all Inferiors in the Confirm-set (excluding any from which
2077 RESIGN is received) for a Confirm decision to be taken.

2078 A Composer must make a Cancel decision (applying to all Inferiors) if:

- 2079 • it is instructed to Cancel by the Terminator
- 2080 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior in the Confirm-set
- 2081 • if it is unable to persist a Confirm decision

2082 A Composer may be asked to prepare some or all of its Inferiors by receiving
2083 PREPARE_INFERIORS. It issues PREPARE to any of those Inferiors from which none of
2084 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN have been received, and replies to the
2085 PREPARE_INFERIORS with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2086 A Composer may be asked to Cancel some of its Inferiors, but not itself, by receiving
2087 CANCEL_INFERIORS.

Composer receives	Composer sends
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2088 **4.4.4 Terminator**

2089 Asks a Decider to Confirm the Business Transaction, or instructs it to Cancel all or (for a
2090 Cohesion) part of the Business Transaction.

2091 All communications between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator. A
2092 Terminator is usually an Application Element.

2093 A request to Confirm is made by sending CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the target Decider. If the
 2094 Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may select which of the Composer's Inferiors
 2095 are to be included in the Confirm-set. If the Decider is an Atom Coordinator, all Inferiors are
 2096 included. After applying the decision, the Decider replies with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED,
 2097 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED or (in the case of problems) INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2098 A Terminator may ask a Composer (but not a Coordinator) to prepare some or all of its Inferiors
 2099 with PREPARE_INFERIORS. The Composer replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2100 A Terminator may send CANCEL_TRANSACTION to instruct the Decider to Cancel the whole
 2101 Business Transaction. The Decider replies with CANCEL_COMPLETE if all Inferiors Cancel
 2102 successfully, and with INFERIOR_STATUSES in the case of problems. If the Decider is a
 2103 Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may send CANCEL_INFERIORS to Cancel some of the
 2104 Inferiors; the Decider always replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2105 A Terminator may check the status of the Inferiors of the Decider by sending
 2106 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES. The Decider replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

Terminator sends	Terminator receives
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2107 4.4.5 Initiator

2108 Requests a **Factory** to create a Superior – this will either be a Decider (representing a new top-
 2109 level Business Transaction) or a sub-coordinator or sub-composer to be the Inferior of an existing
 2110 Business Transaction.

Initiator sends	Initiator receives
BEGIN	BEGUN

2111
 2112 The CONTEXT in the BEGUN is that for the new Superior.

2113 4.4.6 Factory

2114 Creates Superiors and returns the CONTEXT for the new Superior as a parameter of BEGUN.
 2115 The following types of Superior are created :

- 2116 • Decider, which is either
 - 2117 – Composer or
 - 2118 – Coordinator
- 2119 • Sub-composer
- 2120 • Sub-coordinator

2121

Factory receives	Factory sends
BEGIN	BEGUN

2122

2123 If the BEGIN has no contained CONTEXT, the Factory creates a Decider, either a Cohesion
 2124 Composer or an Atom Coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the
 2125 BEGIN.
 2126 If the BEGIN has a contained CONTEXT, the new Superior is also enrolled as an Inferior of the
 2127 Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The new Superior is thus a sub-composer or sub-
 2128 coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

2129 **4.5 Other roles**

2130 **4.5.1 Redirector**

2131 Sends a REDIRECT message to inform a Superior or Inferior that an address previously supplied
 2132 for the Peer (i.e. an Inferior or Superior, respectively) is no longer appropriate, and to supply a
 2133 new address or set of addresses to replace the old one.

2134 A Redirector may send a REDIRECT message in response to receiving a message using the old
 2135 address, or may send REDIRECT at its own initiative.

2136 If a Superior moves from the superior-address in its CONTEXT, or an Inferior moves from the
 2137 inferior-address in the ENROL message, the implementation **must** ensure that a Redirector
 2138 catches any inbound messages using the old address and replies with a REDIRECT message
 2139 giving the new address. (Note that the inbound message may itself be a REDIRECT message, in
 2140 which case the Redirector shall use the new address in the received message as the target for
 2141 the REDIRECT that it sends.)

2142 After receiving a REDIRECT message, the BTP Actor **must** use the new address not the old one,
 2143 unless failure prevents it updating its information.

Redirector receives	Redirector sends
Any message for Superior or Inferior	REDIRECT

2144 **4.5.2 Status Requestor**

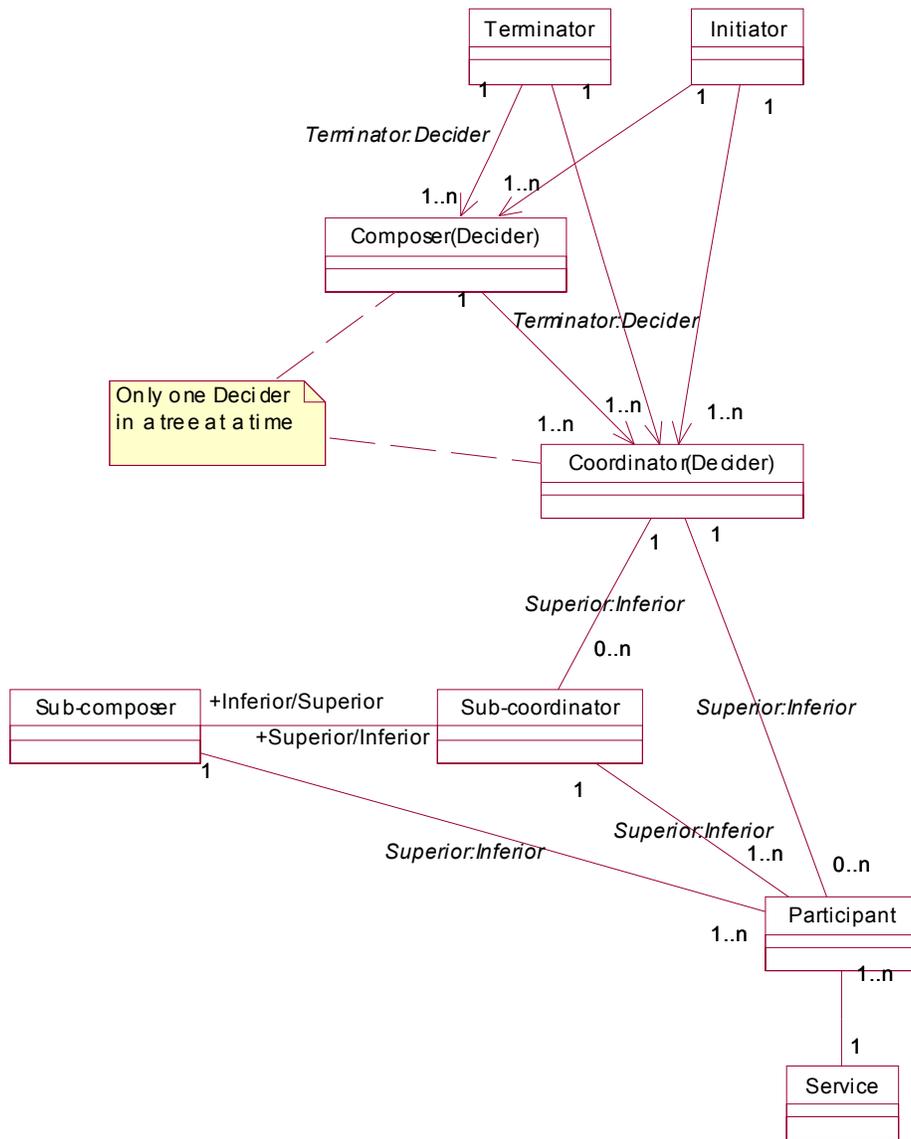
2145 Requests and receives the current status of a Transaction Tree Node – any of an Inferior,
 2146 Superior or Decider, or the current status of the nodes relationships with its Inferiors, if any. The
 2147 Role of Status Requestor has no responsibilities – it is just a name for where
 2148 REQUEST_STATUS and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES come from
 2149 (REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES is also issued by a Terminator to a Decider).

Status Requestor sends	Status Requestor receives
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2150
 2151 The receiver of the request can refuse to provide the status information by replying with
 2152 FAULT(StatusRefused). The information returned in STATUS will always relate to the
 2153 Transaction Tree Node as a whole (e.g. as an Inferior, even if it is also a Superior).

2154 **4.6 Summary of relationships**

2155 Figure 20 summarises the relationships between the BTP roles. BTP can be implemented using
 2156 proprietary equivalents of the Terminator and Decider roles.



2157
 2158 *Figure 20 Summary of relationships between roles*

5 Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts

2159

2160 BT Protocol Messages are defined in this section in terms of the abstract information that has to
2161 be communicated. These abstract messages will be mapped to concrete messages
2162 communicated by a particular Carrier Protocol (there can be several such mappings defined).

2163 The abstract message set and the associated state table assume the Carrier Protocol will

- 2164 • deliver messages completely and correctly, or not at all (corrupted messages will not be
2165 delivered);
- 2166 • report some communication failures, but will not necessarily report all (i.e. not all message
2167 deliveries are positively acknowledged within the carrier);
- 2168 • sometimes deliver successive messages in a different order than they were sent; and
- 2169 • does not have built-in mechanisms to link a request and a response

2170 *Note -- these assumptions would be met by a mapping to SMTP and more than*
2171 *met by mappings to SOAP/HTTP.*

2172 However, when the abstract message set is mapped to a Carrier Protocol that provides a richer
2173 service (e.g. reports all delivery failures, guarantees ordered delivery or offers a request/response
2174 mechanism), the mapping can take advantage of these features. Typically in such cases, some of
2175 the parameters of an abstract message will be implicit in the carrier mechanisms, while the values
2176 of other parameters will be directly represented in transmitted elements.

2177 The abstract messages include **Delivery Parameters** that are concerned with the transmission
2178 and delivery of the messages as well as **Payload Parameters** directly concerned with the
2179 progression of the BTP relationships. When bound to a particular Carrier Protocol and for
2180 particular implementation configurations, parts or all of the Delivery Parameters may be implicit in
2181 the Carrier Protocol and will not appear in the "on-the-wire" representation of the BTP messages
2182 as such. Delivery Parameters are defined as being only those parameters that are concerned
2183 with the transmission of this message, or of an immediate reply (thus address parameters to be
2184 used in repeated later messages and the identifiers of both sender and receiver are Payload
2185 Parameters). In the tables in this section, Delivery Parameters are shown in shaded cells.

2186 5.1 Addresses

2187 All of the messages except CONTEXT have a "target address" parameter and many also have
2188 other address parameters. These latter identify the desired target of other messages in the set. In
2189 all cases, the exact value will have been originally determined by the implementation that is the
2190 target or intended target.

2191 The detailed format of the address will depend on the particular Carrier Protocol, but at this
2192 abstract level is considered to have three parts. The first part, the "binding name", identifies the
2193 binding to a particular Carrier Protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can
2194 be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the "binding address", is meaningful to
2195 the Carrier Protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to
2196 be delivered to a receiver). The third part, "additional information", is not used or understood by
2197 the Carrier Protocol. The "additional information" may be a structured value.

2198 When a message is actually transmitted, the "binding name" of the target address will identify
2199 which Carrier Protocol is in use and the "binding address" will identify the destination, as known to
2200 the Carrier Protocol. The entire binding address is considered to be "consumed" by the Carrier
2201 Protocol implementation. All of it may be used by the sending implementation, or some of it may
2202 be transmitted in headers, or as part of a URL in the Carrier Protocol, but then used or consumed
2203 by the receiving implementation of the Carrier Protocol to direct the BTP message to a BTP-
2204 aware entity (BTP-aware in that it is capable of interpreting the BTP messages). The "additional

2205 information” of the target address will be part of the BTP message itself and used in some way by
2206 the receiving BTP-aware entity (it could be used to route the message on to some other BTP
2207 entity). Thus, for the target address, only the “additional information” field is transmitted in the
2208 BTP message and the “additional information” is opaque to parties other than the recipient.

2209 For other addresses in BTP messages, all three components will be within the message.

2210 All messages that concern a particular Superior:Inferior relationship have an identifier parameter
2211 for the target side as well as the target address. This allows full flexibility for implementation
2212 choices – an implementation can:

- 2213 a) Use the same binding address and additional information for multiple Business
2214 Transactions, using the identifier parameter to locate the relevant state information;
- 2215 b) Use the same binding address for multiple Business Transactions and use the additional
2216 information to locate the information; or
- 2217 c) Use a different binding address for each Business Transaction.

2218 Which of these choices is used is opaque to the entity sending the message – both parts of the
2219 address and the identifier originated at the recipient of this message (and were transmitted as
2220 parameters of earlier messages in the opposite direction).

2221 BTP recovery requires that the state information for a Superior or Inferior is accessible after
2222 failure and that the Peer can distinguish between temporary inaccessibility and the permanent
2223 non-existence of the state information. As is explained in “3.4.4 Redirection” in the conceptual
2224 model, BTP provides mechanisms – having a set of **BTP Addresses** for some parameters, and
2225 the REDIRECT message – that make this possible, even if the recovered state information is on a
2226 different address to the original one, as may be the case if case c) above is used.

2227 **5.2 Request/response pairs**

2228 Many of the messages combine in pairs as a request and its response. However, in some cases
2229 the response message is sent without a triggering request, or as a possible response to more
2230 than one type of request. To allow for this, the abstract message set treats each message as
2231 standalone; but where a request does expect a reply, a “reply-address” parameter will be present.
2232 For any message with a reply address parameter, in the case of certain errors, a FAULT
2233 message will be sent to the reply address instead of the expected reply.

2234 Between Superior and Inferior the address of the Peer is normally known (from the “superior-
2235 address” on an earlier CONTEXT or the “inferior-address” on a received ENROL). However, in
2236 some cases a message will be received for a Superior or Inferior that is not known – the state
2237 information no longer exists. This is not an exceptional condition but occurs when one side has
2238 either not created or has removed its persistent state in accordance with the procedures, but a
2239 message has got lost in a failure, and the Peer still has state information. The response to a
2240 message for an unknown (and logically non-existent) Superior is SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown,
2241 for an unknown Inferior it is INFERIOR_STATE/unknown. However, since the intended target is
2242 unknown, there is no information to locate the Peer, which sent the undeliverable message. To
2243 enable the receiver to reply with the appropriate *_STATE/unknown, all the messages between
2244 Superior and Inferior have a “senders-address” parameter. If a FAULT message is to be sent in
2245 response to message which (as an abstract message) has a “senders-address” parameter, the
2246 FAULT message is sent to that address.

2247 *Note – Both reply-address and senders-address may be absent when the Carrier*
2248 *Protocol itself has a request/response pattern. In these cases, the reply or sender*
2249 *address is implicitly that of the sender of the request (and thus the destination of a*
2250 *response)*

2251 **5.3 Compounding messages**

2252 BTP messages may be sent in combination with each other, or with other (application) messages.
2253 There are two cases:

2254 a) Sending the messages together where the combination has semantic significance. One
2255 message is said to be “related to” the other – the combination is termed a “group”.

2256 b) Sending of the messages where the combination has no semantic significance, but is
2257 merely a convenience or optimisation. This is termed “bundling” – the combination is
2258 termed a “bundle”.

2259 The form A&B is used to refer to a combination (group) where message B is sent in relation to A
2260 (“relation” is asymmetric). The form A+B is used to refer to A and B bundled together- the
2261 transmission of the bundle "A+B" is semantically identical to the transmission of A followed by the
2262 transmission of B.

2263 Only certain combinations of messages are possible in a group, and the meaning of the relation is
2264 specifically defined for each such combination in the next section. A particular group is treated as
2265 a unit for transmission – it has a single target address. This is usually that of one of the messages
2266 in the group – the specification for the group defines which.

2267 A “bundle” of messages may contain both unrelated messages and groups of related messages.
2268 The only constraint on which messages and groups can be bundled is that all have the same
2269 binding address, but each may have different “additional information” values. (Messages within a
2270 related group may have different addresses, where the rules of their relatedness permit this).
2271 Unless constrained by the binding, any messages or groups that are to be sent to the same
2272 binding address may be bundled – the fact that the binding addresses are the same is a
2273 necessary and sufficient condition for the sender to determine that the messages can be bundled.

2274 A particular and important case of related messages is where a BTP CONTEXT message is sent
2275 related to an Application Message. In this case, the target of the Application Message defines the
2276 destination of the CONTEXT message. The receiving implementation may in fact remove the
2277 CONTEXT before delivering the Application Message to the application (Service) proper, but from
2278 the perspective of the sender, the two are sent to the same place.

2279 The compounding mechanisms, and the multi-part address structures, support the “one-wire” and
2280 “one-shot” communication patterns.

2281 In “one-wire”, all message exchanges between two sides of a Superior:Inferior relationship,
2282 including the associated Application Messages, pass via the same “endpoints”. These “endpoints”
2283 may in fact be relays, routing messages on to particular Actors within their domain. The onward
2284 routing will require some further addressing, but this has to be opaque to the sender. This can be
2285 achieved if the relaying endpoint ensures that all addresses for Actors in its domain have the
2286 relay’s address as their binding address, and any routing information it will need in its own
2287 domain is placed in the additional information. (This may involve the relay changing addresses in
2288 messages as they pass through it on the way out). On receiving a message, it determines the
2289 within-domain destination from the received additional information (which is thus rewritten) and
2290 forwards the message appropriately. The sender is unaware of this, and merely sees addresses
2291 with the same binding address, which it is permitted to bundle. The content of the “additional
2292 information” is a matter only for the relay – it could put an entire BTP Address in there, or other
2293 implementation-defined information. Note that a quite different one-wire implementation can be
2294 constructed where there is no relaying, but the receiving entity effectively performs all roles, using
2295 the received identifiers to locate the appropriate state.

2296 “One-shot” communication makes it possible to send an Application Message, receive the
2297 application reply, enrol an Inferior to be responsible for the Confirm/Cancel of the operations of
2298 those message and inform the Superior that the Inferior is prepared, all in one two-way exchange
2299 across the network (e.g. one request/reply of a Carrier Protocol).. The application request is sent
2300 with a related CONTEXT message. The application response is sent with a relation group of
2301 CONTEXT_REPLY/related, ENROL/no-rsp-req message and a PREPARED message. This is
2302 possible even if the Superior address is different from the address of the Application Element that
2303 sends the original message (if the application exchange is request/reply, there may not even be
2304 an identifiable address for the Application Element). The target addresses of the ENROL and
2305 PREPARED (the Superior address) are not transmitted; the Actor that was originally responsible

2306 for adding the CONTEXT to the outbound Application Message remembers the Superior address
2307 and forwards the ENROL and PREPARED appropriately.

2308 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single Application Message,
2309 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each sent related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. If
2310 an operation fails, a CANCELLED message is sent instead of a PREPARED.

2311 If the CONTEXT has “superior-type” of “atom”, then subsequent messages to the same Service,
2312 with the same related CONTEXT/atom, can have their associated operations put under the
2313 control of the same Inferior, and only a CONTEXT_REPLY/completed is sent back with the
2314 response (if the new operations fail, it will be necessary to send back
2315 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated, or send CANCELLED). If the “superior type” on the CONTEXT is
2316 “cohesive”, each operation will require separate enrolment.

2317 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
2318 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
2319 the application or by the binding in use.

2320 **5.4 Extensibility**

2321 To simplify interoperation between implementations of this edition of BTP with implementations of
2322 future editions, the “must-be-understood” sub-parameter as specified for Qualifiers may be
2323 defined for use with any parameter added to an existing message in a future revision of this
2324 specification. The default for “must-be-understood” shall be “true”, so an implementation receiving
2325 an unrecognised parameter without a “false” value for “must-be-understood” shall not accept it
2326 (the FAULT value “UnrecognisedParameter” is available, but other errors, including lower-layer
2327 parsing/unmarshalling errors may be reported instead). If “must-be-understood” with the value
2328 “false” is present as a sub-parameter of a parameter in any message, a receiving implementation
2329 **should** ignore the parameter.

2330 How the sub-parameter is associated with the new parameter is determined by the particular
2331 binding.

2332 No special mechanism is provided to allow for the introduction of completely new messages.

2333 **5.5 Messages**

2334 **5.5.1 Qualifiers**

2335 All messages have a Qualifiers parameter which contains zero or more Qualifier values. A
2336 Qualifier has sub-parameters:

Sub-parameter	Type
qualifier name	string
qualifier group	URI
must-be-understood	Boolean
to-be-propagated	Boolean
content	Arbitrary – depends on type

2337

2338 **qualifier group**

2339 ensures the Qualifier name is unambiguous. Qualifiers in the same group need not have
2340 any functional relationship. The qualifier group will typically be used to identify the
2341 specification that defines the qualifier’s meaning and use. Qualifiers may be defined in
2342 this or other standard specifications, in specifications of a particular community of users
2343 or of implementations or by bilateral agreement.

- 2344 **qualifier name**
 2345 this identifies the meaning and use of the Qualifier, using a name that is unambiguous
 2346 within the scope of the Qualifier group.
- 2347 **must-be-understood**
 2348 if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity does not recognise the Qualifier type
 2349 (or does not implement the necessary functionality), a FAULT “UnsupportedQualifier”
 2350 shall be returned and the message shall not be processed. Default is “true”.
- 2351 **to-be-propagated**
 2352 if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity passes the BTP message (which may
 2353 be a CONTEXT, but can be other messages) onwards to other entities, the same
 2354 Qualifier value shall be included. If the value is “false”, the Qualifier shall not be
 2355 automatically included if the BTP message is passed onwards. (If the receiving entity
 2356 does support the qualifier type, it is possible a propagated message may contain another
 2357 instance of the same type, even with the same Content – this is not considered
 2358 propagation of the original qualifier.). Default is “false”.
- 2359 **content**
 2360 the type (which may be structured) and meaning of the content is defined by the
 2361 specification of the Qualifier.

2362 **5.6 Messages not restricted to outcome or Control**
 2363 **Relationships.**

2364 The messages in this section are used between various roles. CONTEXT message is used in the
 2365 Initiator:Factory relationship (when it is related to BEGIN or to BEGUN), and related to an
 2366 application ‘message’ to propagate the Business Transaction between parts of the
 2367 application. CONTEXT_REPLY is used as the reply to a CONTEXT.REQUEST_STATUS can be
 2368 issued to, and STATUS returned by any of Decider, Superior or Inferior. FAULT can be used on
 2369 any relationship to indicate an error condition back to the sender of a message.

2370 **5.6.1 CONTEXT**

2371 A CONTEXT is supplied by (or on behalf of) a Superior and related to one or more Application
 2372 Messages. (The means by which this relationship is represented is determined by the binding and
 2373 the binding mechanisms of the Application Protocol.) The “superior-type” parameter identifies
 2374 whether the Superior will apply the same decision to all Inferiors enrolled using the same superior
 2375 identifier (“superior-type” is “atom”) or whether it may apply different decisions (“superior-type” is
 2376 “cohesion”).

Parameter	Type
superior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
superior-identifier	Identifier
superior-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
reply-address	BTP Address

2377 **superior-address**
 2378 the address to which ENROL and other messages from an enrolled Inferior are to be
 2379 sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

2380 **superior-identifier**

2381 identifies the Superior. This shall be globally unambiguous.

2382 **superior-type**

2383 identifies whether the CONTEXT refers to a Cohesion or an Atom. Default is atom.

2384 **qualifiers**

2385 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit” is carried

2386 by CONTEXT.

2387 **reply-address**

2388 the address to which a replying CONTEXT_REPLY is to be sent. This may be different

2389 each time the CONTEXT is transmitted – it refers to the destination of a replying

2390 CONTEXT_REPLY for this particular transmission of the CONTEXT. It shall be absent

2391 when CONTEXT is transmitted as a parameter of the BEGIN or BEGUN messages.

2392 There is no “target-address” parameter for CONTEXT as it is only transmitted in relation to the

2393 Application Messages or as a parameter of BEGIN and BEGUN.

2394 The forms CONTEXT/cohesion and CONTEXT/atom refer to CONTEXT messages with the

2395 “superior-type” with the appropriate value.

2396 **5.6.2 CONTEXT_REPLY**

2397 CONTEXT_REPLY is sent after receipt of CONTEXT (related to Application Message(s) to

2398 indicate whether all necessary enrolments have already completed (ENROLLED has been

2399 received) or will be completed by ENROL messages sent in relation to the CONTEXT_REPLY or

2400 if an enrolment attempt has failed. CONTEXT_REPLY may be sent related to an Application

2401 Message (typically the response to the Application Message related to the CONTEXT). In some

2402 bindings the CONTEXT_REPLY may be implicit in the Application Message. CONTEXT_REPLY

2403 is used in some of the related groups to allow BTP messages to be sent to a Superior with an

2404 Application Message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
completion-status	completed/incomplete/related/repudiated
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2405

2406 **superior-identifier**

2407 the “superior-identifier” from the CONTEXT

2408 **inferior-identifier**

2409 the “inferior-identifier” of an Inferior that has been (or is being) enrolled with the Superior

2410 identified by the CONTEXT. This parameter is optional (it is used in the

2411 CONTEXT_REPLY&Application message related group)

2412 **completion-status:**

2413 reports whether all enrol operations made necessary by the receipt of the earlier

2414 CONTEXT message have completed. Values are

Value	meaning
<i>completed</i>	All enrolments (if any) have succeeded already

Value	meaning
<i>incomplete</i>	Further enrolments are possible (used only in related groups with other BTP messages)
<i>related</i>	At least some enrolments are to be performed by ENROL messages related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. All other enrolments (if any) have succeeded already.
<i>repudiated</i>	At least one enrolment has failed. The implications of receiving the CONTEXT have not been honoured.

2415 **qualifiers**

2416 standardised or other qualifiers.

2417 **target-address**

2418 the address to which the CONTEXT_REPLY is sent. This shall be the “reply-address”
2419 from the CONTEXT.

2420 The form CONTEXT_REPLY/completed, CONTEXT_REPLY/related and
2421 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated refer to CONTEXT_REPLY messages with status having the
2422 appropriate value. The form CONTEXT_REPLY/ok refers to either of
2423 CONTEXT_REPLY/completed or CONTEXT_REPLY/related.

2424 If there are no necessary enrolments (e.g. the Application Messages related to the received
2425 CONTEXT did not require the enrolment of any Inferiors), then CONTEXT_REPLY/completed is
2426 used.

2427 If a CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated is received, the receiving implementation **must** ensure that
2428 the Business Transaction will not be confirmed.

2429 **5.6.3 REQUEST_STATUS**

2430 Sent to an Inferior, Superior or to a Decider to ask it to reply with STATUS. The receiver may
2431 reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused).

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2432 **target-identifier**

2433 The identifier for the Business Transaction, or part of Business Transaction whose status
2434 is sought. If the target-address is a “decider-address”, this parameter shall be the
2435 “transaction-identifier” on the BEGUN message. If the “target-address” is an “inferior-
2436 address”, this parameter shall be the “inferior-identifier” on the ENROL message. If the
2437 “target-address” is a “superior-address”, this parameter shall be the “superior-identifier”
2438 on the CONTEXT.

2439 **qualifiers**

2440 standardised or other qualifiers.

2441 **target-address**

2442 the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. This can be any of
2443 “decider-address”, “inferior-address” or “superior-address”.

2444 **reply-address**

2445 the address to which the replying STATUS should be sent.

2446 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2447 **General**

2448 **Redirect**

2449 if the intended target now has a different address

2450 **StatusRefused**

2451 if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this message

2452 **5.6.4 STATUS**

2453 Sent by a Inferior, Superior or Decider in reply to a REQUEST_STATUS, reporting the overall
2454 state of the Transaction Tree Node represented by the sender.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status	See below
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2455 **responders-identifier**

2456 the identifier of the state, identical to the “target-identifier” on the REQUEST_STATUS.

2457 **status**

2458 states the current status of the Transaction Tree Node represented by the sender. Some
2459 of the values are only issued if the sender is an Inferior. If the Transaction Tree Node is
2460 both Superior and Inferior (i.e. is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer), and two status
2461 values would be valid for the current state, it is the sender’s option which one is used.

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Created</i>	Not applicable	The Inferior exists (and is addressable) but it has not been enrolled with a Superior
<i>Enrolling</i>	Not applicable	ENROL has been sent, but ENROLLED is awaited
<i>Active</i>	New enrolment of inferiors is possible	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>Resigning</i>	Not applicable	RESIGN has been sent; RESIGNED is awaited
<i>Resigned</i>	Not applicable	RESIGNED has been received
<i>Preparing</i>	Not applicable	PREPARE has been received; PREPARED has not been sent

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Prepared</i>	Not applicable	PREPARED has been sent; no outcome has been received or autonomous decision made
<i>Confirming</i>	Confirm decision has been made or CONFIRM has been received as Inferior but responses from inferiors are pending	CONFIRM has been received or an auto-confirm has been decided (CONFIRMED/auto may or may not have been sent); CONFIRMED/response has not been sent
<i>Confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/responses have been received from all Inferiors	CONFIRMED/response has been sent
<i>Cancelling</i>	Cancel decision has been made but responses from inferiors are pending	CANCEL has been received or auto-cancel has been decided
<i>Cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received from all Inferiors	CANCELLED has been sent
<i>Cancel-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous Cancel decision was made, CONFIRM received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Confirm-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous confirm decision was made, CANCEL received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Hazard</i>	A hazard has been reported from at least one Inferior	A hazard has been discovered; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Contradicted</i>	Not applicable	CONTRADICTION has been received
<i>Unknown</i>	No state information for the target-identifier exists	No state information for the target-identifier exists
<i>Inaccessible</i>	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined

2462 **qualifiers**

2463 standardised or other qualifiers.

2464 **target-address**

2465 the address to which the STATUS is sent. This will be the "reply-address" on the
2466 REQUEST_STATUS message

2467 **5.6.5 FAULT**

2468 Sent in reply to various messages to report an error condition. The FAULT message is used on
2469 all the relationships as a general negative reply to a message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
fault-type	See below
fault-data	See below
fault-text	Text string
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2470 **superior-identifier**

2471 the "superior-identifier" as on the CONTEXT message and as used on the ENROL
2472 message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the superior).

2473 **inferior-identifier**

2474 the "inferior-identifier" as on the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to
2475 the inferior)

2476 **fault-type**

2477 identifies the nature of the error, as specified for each of the main messages.

2478 **fault-data**

2479 information relevant to the particular error. Each "fault-type" defines the content of the
2480 "fault-data":

fault-type	meaning	fault-data
<i>CommunicationFailure</i>	Any fault arising from the carrier mechanism and communication infrastructure.	Determined by the carrier mechanism and binding specification
<i>DuplicateInferior</i>	An inferior with the same address and identifier is already enrolled with this Superior	The identifier
<i>General</i>	Any otherwise unspecified problem	None
<i>InvalidDecider</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Terminator and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>InvalidInferior</i>	The “inferior-identifier” in the message or at least one “inferior-identifier”s in an “inferior-list” parameter is not known or does not identify a known Inferior	One or more invalid identifiers
<i>InvalidSuperior</i>	The received identifier is not known or does not identify a known Superior	The identifier
<i>StatusRefused</i>	The receiver will not report the requested status (or inferior statuses) to this StatusRequestor	None
<i>InvalidTerminator</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Decider and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>UnknownParameter</i>	A BTP message has been received with an unrecognised parameter	None
<i>UnknownTransaction</i>	The transaction-identifier is unknown	The transaction-identifier
<i>UnsupportedQualifier</i>	A qualifier has been received that is not recognised and on which “must-be-Understood” is “true”.	Qualifier group and name
<i>WrongState</i>	The message has arrived when the recipient or the transaction identified by a related CONTEXT is in an invalid state.	None
<i>Redirect</i>	The target of the BTP message now has a different address	Set of BTP Addresses, to be used instead of the address the BTP message was received on

2481 **fault-text**

2482 Free text describing the fault or providing more information. Whether this parameter is
2483 present, and exactly what it contains are an implementation option.

2484 **qualifiers**

2485 standardised or other qualifiers.

2486 **target-address**

2487 the address to which the FAULT is sent. This may be the “reply-address” from a received
2488 message or the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT
2489 or ENROL message

2490 *Note – If the carrier mechanism used for the transmission of BTP messages is*
2491 *capable of delivering messages in a different order than they were sent in, the*
2492 *“WrongState” FAULT is not sent and should be ignored if received.*

2493 **5.6.6 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES**

2494 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES may be sent to and INFERIOR_STATUSES sent from any
2495 Decider, Superior or Inferior, asking it to report on the status of its relationships with Inferiors (if
2496 any). Since Deciders are required to respond to REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES with
2497 INFERIOR_STATUSES but non-Deciders may just issue FAULT(StatusRefused), and
2498 INFERIOR_STATUSES is also used as a reply to other messages from Terminator to Decider,
2499 these messages are described below under the messages used in the Control Relationships.

2500 **5.7 Messages used in the Outcome Relationships**

2501 **5.7.1 ENROL**

2502 A request to a Superior to ENROL an Inferior. This is typically issued after receipt of a CONTEXT
2503 message in relation to an application request.

2504 The Actor issuing ENROL plays the Role of Enroller.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	Identifier
response-requested	Boolean
inferior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2505 **superior-identifier.**

2506 The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2507 **response-requested**

2508 true if an ENROLLED response is required, false otherwise. Default is false.

2509 **inferior-address**

2510 the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and SUPERIOR_STATE
2511 messages for this Inferior are to be sent.

2512 **inferior-identifier**

2513 an identifier that identifies this Inferior. This shall be globally unambiguous..

2514 **qualifiers**

2515 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be present.

2516 **target-address**

2517 the address to which the ENROL is sent. This will be the “superior-address” from the
2518 CONTEXT message.

2519 **reply-address**

2520 the address to which a replying ENROLLED is to be sent, if “response-requested” is true.
2521 If this field is absent and “response-requested” is true, the ENROLLED should be sent to
2522 the “inferior-address” (or one of them, at sender’s option)

2523 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2524 **General**

2525 **Redirect**

2526 if the Superior now has a different superior-address

2527 **DuplicateInferior**

2528 if inferior with at least one of the set “inferior-address” the same and the same “inferior-
2529 identifier” is already enrolled

2530 **WrongState**

2531 if it is too late to enrol new Inferiors (generally if the Superior has already sent a
2532 PREPARED message to its superior or terminator, or if it has already issued CONFIRM
2533 to other Inferiors).

2534 The form ENROL/rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having the
2535 value “true”; ENROL/no-rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having
2536 the value “false”

2537 ENROL/no-rsp-req is typically sent in relation to CONTEXT_REPLY/related. ENROL/rsp-req is
2538 typically when CONTEXT_REPLY/completed will be used (after the ENROLLED message has
2539 been received.)

2540 **5.7.2 ENROLLED**

2541 Sent from Superior in reply to an ENROL/rsp-req message, to indicate the Inferior has been
2542 successfully enrolled (and will therefore be included in the termination exchanges)

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2543 **superior-identifier**

2544 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2545 **inferior-identifier**

2546 the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2547 **qualifiers**

2548 standardised or other qualifiers.

2549 **target-address**

2550 the address to which the ENROLLED is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the
2551 ENROL message (or one of the “inferior-address”es if the “reply-address” was empty)

2552 **sender-address**

2553 the address from which the ENROLLED is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2554 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving ENROLLED.

2555 **5.7.3 RESIGN**

2556 Sent from an enrolled Inferior to the Superior to remove the Inferior from the enrolment. This can
2557 only be sent if the operations of the Business Transaction have had no effect as perceived by the
2558 Inferior.

2559 RESIGN may be sent at any time prior to the sending of a PREPARED or CANCELLED message
2560 (which cannot then be sent). RESIGN may be sent in response to a PREPARE message.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	identifier
inferior-identifier	identifier
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2561 **superior-identifier**

2562 The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2563 **inferior-identifier**

2564 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2565 **response-requested**

2566 is set to “true” if a RESIGNED response is required. Default is “false”.

2567 **qualifiers**

2568 standardised or other qualifiers.

2569 **target-address**

2570 the address to which the RESIGN is sent. This will be the superior address as used on
2571 the ENROL message.

2572 **sender-address**

2573 the address from which the RESIGN is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2574 *Note -- RESIGN is equivalent to readonly vote in some other protocols, but can be*
2575 *issued early.*

2576 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2577 **General**

2578 **InvalidInferior**

2579 if no ENROL had been received for this “inferior-identifier”

2580 **WrongState**

2581 if a PREPARED or CANCELLED has already been received by the Superior from this
2582 Inferior

2583 The form RESIGN/rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested” having the
2584 value “true”; RESIGN /no-rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested”
2585 having the value “false”

2586 **5.7.4 RESIGNED**

2587 Sent in reply to a RESIGN/rsp-req message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2588 **inferior-identifier**

2589 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2590 **qualifiers**

2591 standardised or other qualifiers.

2592 **target-address**

2593 the address to which the RESIGNED is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the
2594 ENROL message.

2595 **sender-address**

2596 the address from which the RESIGNED is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2597 After receiving this message the Inferior will not receive any more messages with this “inferior-
2598 identifier”.

2599 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2600 **General**

2601 **WrongState**

2602 if RESIGN has not been sent

2603 **5.7.5 PREPARE**

2604 Sent from Superior to an Inferior from whom ENROL but neither CANCELLED nor RESIGN have
2605 been received, requesting a PREPARED message. PREPARE can be sent after receiving a
2606 PREPARED message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2607 **superior-identifier**

2608 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2609 **inferior-identifier**

2610 the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2611 **qualifiers**

2612 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Minimum inferior timeout” is
 2613 carried by PREPARE.

2614 **target-address**
 2615 the address to which the PREPARE message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address”
 2616 from the ENROL message.

2617 **sender-address**
 2618 the address from which the PREPARE is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2619 On receiving PREPARE, an Inferior **should** reply with a PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN.
 2620 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2621 **General**
 2622 **WrongState**
 2623 if a CONFIRM or CANCEL has already been received by this Inferior.

2624 5.7.6 PREPARED

2625 Sent from Inferior to Superior, either unsolicited or in response to PREPARE, but only when the
 2626 Inferior has determined the operations associated with the Inferior can be confirmed and can be
 2627 cancelled, as may be instructed by the Superior. The level of isolation is a local matter (i.e. it is
 2628 the Inferiors choice, as constrained by the shared understanding of the application exchanges) –
 2629 other access may be blocked, may see applied results of operations or may see the original state.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
default-is cancel	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2630 **superior-identifier**
 2631 the “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2632 **inferior-identifier**
 2633 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2634 **default-is-cancel**
 2635 if “true”, the Inferior states that if the outcome at the Superior is to Cancel the operations
 2636 associated with this Inferior, no further messages need be sent to the Inferior. If the
 2637 Inferior does not receive a CONFIRM message, it will Cancel the associated operations.
 2638 The value “true” will invariably be used with a qualifier indicating under what
 2639 circumstances (usually a timeout) an autonomous decision to Cancel will be made. If
 2640 “false”, the Inferior will expect a CONFIRM or CANCEL message as appropriate, even if
 2641 qualifiers indicate that an autonomous decision will be made.

2642 **qualifiers**
 2643 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior timeout” may be carried
 2644 by PREPARED.

2645 **target-address**

2646 the address to which the PREPARED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the
2647 ENROL message.

2648 **sender-address**

2649 the address from which the PREPARED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2650 On sending a PREPARED, the Inferior undertakes to maintain its ability to Confirm or Cancel the
2651 effects of the associated operations until it receives a CONFIRM or CANCEL message. Qualifiers
2652 may define a time limit or other constraints on this promise. The “default-is cancel” parameter
2653 affects only the subsequent message exchanges and does not of itself state that cancellation will
2654 occur.

2655 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2656 **General**

2657 **InvalidInferior**

2658 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
2659 received from this Inferior

2660 The form PREPARED/cancel refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “true”.
2661 The unqualified form PREPARED refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” =
2662 “false”.

2663 **5.7.7 CONFIRM**

2664 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has been received.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2665 **superior-identifier**

2666 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2667 **inferior-identifier**

2668 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2669 **qualifiers**

2670 standardised or other qualifiers.

2671 **target-address**

2672 the address to which the CONFIRM message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address”
2673 from the ENROL message.

2674 **sender-address**

2675 the address from which the CONFIRM is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2676 On receiving CONFIRM, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to undo the
2677 operations associated with the Inferior. The effects of the operations can be made available to
2678 everyone (if they weren’t already).

2679 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2680 **General**

2681 **WrongState**
2682 if no PREPARED has been sent by, or if CANCEL has been received by this Inferior.

2683 **5.7.8 CONFIRMED**

2684 Sent after the Inferior has applied the confirmation, both in reply to CONFIRM or when the Inferior
2685 has made an autonomous Confirm decision, and in reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the
2686 Inferior decides to Confirm its associated operations.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
confirm-received	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2687 **superior-identifier**
2688 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2689 **inferior-identifier**
2690 the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2691 **confirm-received**
2692 “true” if CONFIRMED is sent after receiving a CONFIRM message; “false” if an
2693 autonomous Confirm decision has been made and either if no CONFIRM message has
2694 been received or the implementation cannot determine if CONFIRM has been received
2695 (due to loss of state information in a failure).

2696 **qualifiers**
2697 standardised or other qualifiers.

2698 **target-address**
2699 the address to which the CONFIRMED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on
2700 the CONTEXT message.

2701 **sender-address**
2702 the address from which the CONFIRMED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2703 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2704 **General**

2705 **InvalidInferior**

2706 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
2707 received from this Inferior.

2708 *Note – A CONFIRMED message arriving before a CONFIRM message is sent, or*
2709 *after a CANCEL has been sent, will occur when the Inferior has taken an*
2710 *autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The*
2711 *latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2712 The form CONFIRMED/auto refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “false”;
2713 CONFIRMED/response refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “true”.

2714 **5.7.9 CANCEL**

2715 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior at any time before (and unless) CONFIRM has been sent.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2716 **superior-identifier**

2717 the "superior-identifier" as on the CONTEXT message

2718 **inferior-identifier**

2719 the "inferior-identifier" as on the earlier ENROL message.

2720 **qualifiers**

2721 standardised or other qualifiers.

2722 **target-address**

2723 the address to which the CANCEL message is sent. This will be the "inferior-address"
2724 from the ENROL message.

2725 **sender-address**

2726 the address from which the CANCEL is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2727 When received by an Inferior, the effects of any operations associated with the Inferior should be
2728 undone. If the Inferior had sent PREPARED, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to
2729 Confirm the operations.

2730 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "sender-address"):

2731 **General**

2732 **WrongState**

2733 if a CONFIRM has been received by this Inferior.

2734 **5.7.10 CANCELLED**

2735 Sent when the Inferior has applied (or is applying) cancellation of the operations associated with
2736 the Inferior. CANCELLED is sent from Inferior to Superior in the following cases:

- 2737 • before (and instead of) sending PREPARED, to indicate the Inferior is unable to apply the
2738 operations in full and is cancelling all of them;
- 2739 • in reply to CANCEL, regardless of whether PREPARED has been sent;
- 2740 • after sending PREPARED and then making and applying an autonomous decision to Cancel;
- 2741 • in reply to CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior decides to Cancel the associated
2742 operations.

2743 As is specified in the state tables, cases 1, 2 and 3 are not always distinct in some circumstances
2744 of recovery and resending of messages.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier

Parameter	Type
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

- 2745 **superior-identifier**
 2746 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.
- 2747 **inferior-identifier**
 2748 the inferior identifier as on the earlier ENROL message.
- 2749 **qualifiers**
 2750 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 2751 **target-address**
 2752 the address to which the CANCELLED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on
 2753 the CONTEXT message.
- 2754 **sender-address**
 2755 the address from which the CANCELLED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.
- 2756 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):
- 2757 **General**
- 2758 **InvalidInferior**
 2759 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
 2760 received from this Inferior
- 2761 **WrongState**
 2762 if CONFIRM has been sent
- 2763 *Note – A CANCELLED message arriving before a CANCEL message is sent, or*
 2764 *after a CONFIRM has been sent, will occur when the Inferior has taken an*
 2765 *autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The*
 2766 *latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2767 **5.7.11 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE**

2768 Sent from a Superior to an enrolled Inferior, when there is only one such enrolled Inferior. In this
 2769 case the two-phase exchange is not performed between the Superior and Inferior and the
 2770 outcome decision for the operations associated with the Inferior is determined by the Inferior.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

- 2771 **superior-identifier**
 2772 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message
- 2773 **inferior-identifier**
 2774 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2775 **qualifiers**
 2776 standardised or other qualifiers.

2777 **target-address**
 2778 the address to which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message is sent This will be the
 2779 “inferior-address” on the ENROL message.

2780 **sender-address**
 2781 the address from which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is sent. This is an address of the
 2782 Superior.

2783 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be issued by a Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has
 2784 been received (subject to the requirement that there is only one enrolled Inferior).

2785 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2786 **General**

2787 **5.7.12 HAZARD**

2788 Sent when the Inferior has either discovered a “mixed” condition: that is unable to correctly and
 2789 consistently Cancel or Confirm the operations in accord with the decision , or when the Inferior is
 2790 unable to determine that a “mixed” condition has not occurred.

2791 HAZARD is also used to reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior determines there is a
 2792 mixed condition within its associated operations or is unable to determine that there is not a
 2793 mixed condition.

2794 *Note - If the Inferior makes its own autonomous decision, then it signals that*
 2795 *decision with CONFIRMED or CANCELLED and waits to receive a confirmatory*
 2796 *CONFIRM or CANCEL, or a CONTRADICTION if the autonomous decision by the*
 2797 *Inferior was the opposite of that made by the Superior.*

2798

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
level	mixed/possible
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2799 **superior-identifier**
 2800 The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2801 **inferior-identifier**
 2802 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2803 **level**
 2804 indicates, with value “mixed” that a mixed condition has definitely occurred; or, with value
 2805 “possible” that it is unable to determine whether a mixed condition has occurred or not.

2806 **qualifiers**
 2807 standardised or other qualifiers.

2808 **target-address**

2809 the address to which the HAZARD is sent. This will be the superior address from the
2810 ENROL message.

2811 **sender-address**

2812 the address from which the HAZARD is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2813 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2814 **General**

2815 **InvalidInferior**

2816 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”

2817 The form HAZARD/mixed refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “mixed”, the form
2818 HAZARD/possible refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “possible”.

2819 **5.7.13 CONTRADICTION**

2820 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior that has taken an autonomous decision contrary to the
2821 decision for the Atom. This is detected by the Superior when the ‘wrong’ one of CONFIRMED or
2822 CANCELLED is received. CONTRADICTION is also sent in response to a HAZARD message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2823 **superior-identifier**

2824 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2825 **inferior-identifier**

2826 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2827 **qualifiers**

2828 standardised or other qualifiers.

2829 **target-address**

2830 the address to which the CONTRADICTION message is sent. This will be the “inferior-
2831 address” from the ENROL message.

2832 **sender-address**

2833 the address from which the CONTRADICTION is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2834 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2835 **General**

2836 **5.7.14 SUPERIOR_STATE**

2837 Sent by a Superior as a query to an Inferior when

- 2838
- in the active state
 - there is uncertainty what state the Inferior has reached (due to recovery from previous failure or other reason).
- 2839
- 2840

2841 Also sent by the Superior to the Inferior in response to a received INFERIOR_STATE or other
 2842 message, in particular states. The <message>-received values can be used when a normal
 2843 message has been received and the Superior is waiting on some other event before it can
 2844 proceed with the protocol. This allows implementations to avoid excessive retransmissions of
 2845 messages. However, sending a SUPERIOR_STATE/*-received does not necessarily imply the
 2846 receipt of the previous message has been recorded persistently. (though this could be indicated
 2847 with a non-standard qualifier)

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2848 **superior-identifier**

2849 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2850 **inferior-identifier**

2851 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2852 **status**

2853 states the current state of the Superior, in terms of its relation to this Inferior only.

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Inferior is in the active state from the perspective of the Superior; ENROLLED has been sent, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received (as far as the Superior knows)
<i>prepared-received</i>	PREPARED has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>confirmed-received</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>cancelled-received</i>	CANCELLED has been received from the Inferior (as a result of an autonomous decision), but no outcome is yet available
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the Superior, or for its relationship with this Inferior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not

status value**Meaning**

exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can treat this as an instruction to Cancel any associated operations

2854 **response-requested**

2855 true, if SUPERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior's initiative; false, if
2856 SUPERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received INFERIOR_STATE or other message.
2857 Can only be true if status is active or prepared-received. Default is "false"

2858 **qualifiers**

2859 standardised or other qualifiers.

2860 **target-address**

2861 the address to which the SUPERIOR_STATE message is sent. This will be the "inferior-
2862 address" from the ENROL message.

2863 **sender-address**

2864 the address from which the SUPERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an address of the
2865 Superior.

2866 The Inferior, on receiving SUPERIOR_STATE with "response-requested = true, should reply in a
2867 timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending
2868 INFERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2869 A status of unknown shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Superior has
2870 no knowledge of the Inferior, or (equivalently) it can be determined that the relationship with the
2871 Inferior was cancelled. If there could be persistent information corresponding to the Superior, but
2872 it is not accessible from the entity receiving an INFERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message
2873 targeted to the Superior or that entity cannot determine whether any such persistent information
2874 exists or not, the response shall be Inaccessible.

2875 SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
2876 INFERIOR_STATE/*y, that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is
2877 no state information for it).

2878 The form SUPERIOR_STATE/some-status-value refers to a SUPERIOR_STATE message with
2879 the specified status value and with "response-requested" = "false". SUPERIOR_STATE/some-
2880 status-value/y refers to a similar message, but with "response-requested" = "true". The form
2881 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a SUPERIOR_STATE message with "response-requested" =
2882 "true" and any value for status.

2883 **5.7.15 INFERIOR_STATE**

2884 Sent by an Inferior as a query when in the active state to a Superior, when (due recovery from
2885 previous failure or other reason) there is uncertainty what state the Superior has reached.

2886 Also sent by the Inferior to the Superior in response to a received SUPERIOR_STATE or other
2887 messages, in particular states. The <message>-received values can be used when a normal
2888 message has been received and the Inferior is waiting on some other event before it can give a
2889 definite reply. This allows implementations to avoid excessive retransmissions of messages.

2890 However, sending a SUPERIOR_STATE/*-received does not necessarily imply the receipt of the
2891 previous message has been recorded persistently. (though this could be indicated with a non-
2892 standard qualifier)

2893

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

- 2894 **superior-identifier**
- 2895 The “superior-identifier” as used on the ENROL message
- 2896 **inferior-identifier**
- 2897 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message
- 2898 **status**
- 2899 states the current state of the Inferior, which corresponds to the last message sent to the Superior by (or in the case of ENROL for) the Inferior
- 2900

status value	meaning/previous message sent
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Superior is in the active state from the perspective of the Inferior; ENROL has been sent, a decision to send PREPARED has not been made.
<i>prepare-received</i>	PREPARE has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN.
<i>confirm-received</i>	CONFIRM has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD.
<i>cancel-received</i>	CANCEL has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD.
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the relationship with the Superior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can be treated as cancelled

- 2901 **response-requested**

2902 "true" if INFERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior's initiative; "false" if
2903 INFERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received SUPERIOR_STATE or other message.
2904 Can only be "true" if "status" is "active" or "prepared-received". Default is "false"

2905 **qualifiers**

2906 standardised or other qualifiers.

2907 **target-address**

2908 the address to which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This will be the "target-address" as
2909 used the original ENROL message.

2910 **sender-address**

2911 the address from which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2912 The Superior, on receiving INFERIOR_STATE with "response-requested" = "true", should reply in
2913 a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending
2914 SUPERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2915 A status of "unknown" shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Inferior has
2916 no knowledge of a relationship with the Superior. If there could be persistent information
2917 corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an
2918 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message targetted on the Inferior or the entity cannot
2919 determine whether any such persistent information exists, the response shall be "inaccessible".

2920 INFERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
2921 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y, that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is
2922 no state information for it).

2923 A SUPERIOR_STATE/INFERIOR_STATE exchange that determines that one or both sides are
2924 in the active state does not require that the Inferior be cancelled (unlike some other two-phase
2925 commit protocols). The relationship between Superior and Inferior, and related Application
2926 Elements may be continued, with new Application Messages carrying the same CONTEXT.
2927 Similarly, if the Inferior is prepared but the Superior is active, there is no required impact on the
2928 progression of the relationship between them.

2929 The form INFERIOR_STATE/some-status-value refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message with the
2930 specified status value and with "response-requested" = "false". INFERIOR_STATE/some-status-
2931 value/y refers to a similar message, but with "response-requested" = "true". The form
2932 INFERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message with "response-requested" =
2933 "true" and any value for status.

2934 **5.7.16 REDIRECT**

2935 Sent when the address previously given for a Superior or Inferior is no longer valid and the
2936 relevant state information is now accessible with a different address (but the same superior or
2937 "inferior-identifier").

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
old-address	Set of BTP Addresses
new-address	Set of BTP Addresses
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2938 **superior-identifier**

2939 The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and used on an ENROL
 2940 message. (present only if the REDIRECT is sent from the Inferior).

2941 **inferior-identifier**

2942 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2943 **old-address**

2944 The previous address of the sender of REDIRECT. A match is considered to apply if any
 2945 of the “old-address” values match one that is already known.

2946 **new-address**

2947 The (set of alternatives) “new-address” values to be used for messages sent to this entity.

2948 **qualifiers**

2949 standardised or other qualifiers.

2950 **target-address**

2951 the address to which the REDIRECT is sent. This is the address of the opposite side
 2952 (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2953 If the Actor whose address is changed is an Inferior, the “new-address” value replaces the
 2954 “inferior-address” as present in the ENROL.

2955 If the Actor whose address is changed is a Superior, the “new-address” value replaces the
 2956 Superior address as present in the CONTEXT message (or as present in any other mechanism
 2957 used to establish the Superior:Inferior relationship).

2958 **5.8 Messages used in Control Relationships**

2959 **5.8.1 BEGIN**

2960 A request to a Factory to create a new Business Transaction. This may either be a new top-level
 2961 transaction, in which case the Composer or Coordinator will be the Decider, or the new Business
 2962 Transaction may be immediately made the Inferior within an existing Business Transaction (thus
 2963 creating a sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator).

Parameter	Type
transaction-type	cohesion/atom
context	CONTEXT message
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2964 **transaction-type**

2965 identifies whether a new Cohesion or new Atom is to be created; this value will be the
 2966 “superior-type” in the new CONTEXT

2967 **qualifiers**

2968 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit” may be
 2969 present on BEGIN, to set the timelimit for the new Business Transaction and will be
 2970 copied to the new CONTEXT. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be present if
 2971 there is a CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2972 **context**

2973 the CONTEXT of an existing Business Transaction. This parameter is present only if a
2974 sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator is being created. If present, the “reply-address”
2975 parameter of the CONTEXT shall be absent.

2976 **target-address**

2977 the address of the entity to which the BEGIN is sent. How this address is acquired and
2978 the nature of the entity are outside the scope of this specification.

2979 **reply-address**

2980 the address to which the replying BEGUN and related CONTEXT message should be
2981 sent.

2982 A new top-level Business Transaction is created if there is no context parameter. A Business
2983 Transaction that is to be Inferior in an existing Business Transaction is created if the context
2984 parameter is present. In this case, the Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Composer or
2985 Coordinator as an Inferior of the Superior identified in that CONTEXT.

2986 *Note – This specification does not provide a standardised means to determine*
2987 *which of the Inferiors of a sub-Composer are in its Confirm set. This is considered*
2988 *part of the application:inferior relationship.*

2989 The forms BEGIN/cohesion and BEGIN/atom refer to BEGIN with “transaction-type” having the
2990 corresponding value.

2991 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2992 **General**

2993 **Redirect**

2994 if the Factory now has a different address

2995 **WrongState**

2996 only issued if the context field is present and the Superior identified by that CONTEXT is
2997 in the wrong state to enrol new Inferiors

2998 **5.8.2 BEGUN**

2999 BEGUN is a reply to BEGIN. There is always a contained CONTEXT, which is the CONTEXT for
3000 the new Business Transaction.

Parameter	Type
decider-address	Set of BTP Addresses
inferior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
transaction-identifier	Identifier
context	CONTEXT message
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3001 **decider-address**

3002 for a top-most transaction (no context parameter on the BEGIN), this is the address to
3003 which PREPARE_INFERIORS, CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, CANCEL_TRANSACTION,
3004 CANCEL_INFERIORS and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES messages are to be
3005 sent; if a context parameter was present on the BEGIN this parameter is absent

3006 **inferior-address**

3007 for a non-top-most transaction (a context parameter was present on the BEGIN), this is
3008 the “inferior-address” used in the enrolment of this Business Transaction with the

3009 Superior identified by the context parameter on the BEGIN. The parameter is optional
3010 (implementor's choice) if this is not a top-most transaction; it shall be absent if this is a
3011 top-most transaction.

3012 **transaction-identifier**

3013 if this is a top-most transaction, this is an globally-unambiguous identifier for the new
3014 Decider (Composer or Coordinator). If this is not a top-most transaction, the transaction-
3015 identifier shall be the inferior-identifier used in the enrolment of this Business Transaction
3016 with the Superior identified by the context parameter of the BEGIN.

3017 *Note – The “transaction-identifier” may be identical to the “superior-identifier” in the*
3018 *CONTEXT message in the context parameter of this BEGUN.*

3019 **context**

3020 the context for the new Business Transaction, ready to be propagated by application
3021 means or used for enrolment.

3022 **qualifiers**

3023 standardised or other qualifiers.

3024 **target-address**

3025 the address to which the BEGUN is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the BEGIN.

3026 At implementation option, the “decider-address” and/or “inferior-address” and the “superior-
3027 address” in the CONTEXT message in the context parameter may be the same or may be
3028 different. There is no general requirement that they even use the same bindings. Any may also be
3029 the same as the “target-address” of the BEGIN message (the identifier on messages will ensure
3030 they are applied to the appropriate Composer or Coordinator).

3031 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving BEGUN.

3032 **5.8.3 PREPARE_INFERIORS**

3033 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider, but only if it is a Cohesion Composer, to tell it to prepare all
3034 or some of its inferiors, by sending PREPARE to any that have not already sent PREPARED,
3035 RESIGN or CANCELLED to the Decider (Composer) on its relationships as Superior. If the
3036 inferiors-list parameter is absent, the request applies to all the inferiors; if the parameter is
3037 present, it applies only to the identified inferiors of the Decider (Composer).

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

3038 **transaction-identifier**

3039 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.

3040 **inferiors-list**

3041 defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider preparation is requested for, using the
3042 “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its Role as Superior). If
3043 this parameter is absent, the PREPARE applies to all Inferiors.

3044 **qualifiers**
 3045 standardised or other qualifiers.
 3046 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**
 3047 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
 3048 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
 3049 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:

3050

Field	Type
inferior-identifier-list	A list of one or more Inferior-identifiers (each of which shall be one of those in the inferiors-list parameter), identifying which inferiors this item refers to.
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the PREPARE messages.

3051 For each Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list, the qualifiers are
 3052 included in the PREPARE message sent to that Inferior.

3053 NOTE – If an Inferior has spontaneously cancelled, prepared or resigned, the qualifiers
 3054 will not be sent.

3055 **target-address**

3056 the address to which the PREPARE_INFERIORS message is sent. This will be the
 3057 decider-address from the BEGUN message.

3058 **reply-address**

3059 the address of the Terminator sending the PREPARE_INFERIORS message.

3060 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (all Inferiors if the parameter is absent),
 3061 from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGNED has been received, the Decider
 3062 shall issue PREPARE. It will reply to the Terminator, using the “reply-address” on the
 3063 PREPARE_INFERIORS message, sending an INFERIOR_STATUSES message giving the
 3064 status of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list parameter (all of them if the parameter was
 3065 absent).

3066 If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond to
 3067 an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation option
 3068 whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-list".

3069 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address):

3070 **General**

3071 **InvalidDecider**

3072 if Decider address is unknown

3073 **Redirect**

3074 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

3075 **UnknownTransaction**

3076 if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3077 **InvalidInferior**

3078 if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

3079 **WrongState**
 3080 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has already been received
 3081 by this Composer.
 3082 The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/all refers to a PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the
 3083 “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/specific refers to a
 3084 PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

3085 **5.8.4 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION**

3086 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider to request confirmation of the Business Transaction. If the
 3087 Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the Confirm-set is specified by the “inferiors-list” parameter.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

3088 **transaction-identifier**
 3089 identifies the Decider. This will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.

3090 **inferiors-list**
 3091 defines which Inferiors enrolled with the Decider, if it is a Cohesion Composer, are to be
 3092 confirmed, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its
 3093 Role as Superior). Shall be absent if the Decider is an Atom Coordinator.

3094 **report-hazard**
 3095 Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
 3096 contradictory decisions within the Business Transaction. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the
 3097 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been
 3098 received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If “report-
 3099 hazard” is “false”, the Decider will reply with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED or
 3100 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED as soon as the decision for the transaction is known.

3101 **qualifiers**
 3102 standardised or other qualifiers.

3103 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**
 3104 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
 3105 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
 3106 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:

Field	Type
inferior-identifier-list	A list of one or more Inferior-identifiers, identifying which inferiors this item refers to.

Field	Type
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the CONFIRM messages, if one is sent to the inferior.
3107	If a CONFIRM decision is made, and an Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list is in the confirm-set, the qualifiers are included in the CONFIRM message sent to that Inferior.
3108	
3109	
3110	NOTE – If qualifiers are required to be sent on a PREPARE (or for Inferiors not in the confirm-set, CANCEL), the PREPARE_INFERIORS (or CANCEL_INFERIORS) messages and their targeted-qualifiers-list parameter should be used.
3111	
3112	
3113	target-address
3114	the address to which the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the “decider-address” on the BEGUN message.
3115	
3116	reply-address
3117	the address of the Terminator sending the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message.
3118	If the “inferiors-list” parameter is present, the Inferiors identified shall be the “Confirm-set” of the Cohesion. If the parameter is absent and the Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the “Confirm-set” shall be all remaining Inferiors. If the Business Transaction is an Atom, the “Confirm-set” is automatically all the Inferiors.
3119	
3120	
3121	
3122	Any Inferiors from which RESIGN is received are not counted in the Confirm-set.
3123	If, for each of the Inferiors in the Confirm-set, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received, PREPARE shall be issued to that Inferior.
3124	
3125	<i>NOTE -- If PREPARE has been sent but PREPARED not yet received from an Inferior in the Confirm-set, it is an implementation option whether and when to re-send PREPARE. The Superior implementation may choose to re-send PREPARE if there are indications that the earlier PREPARE was not delivered.</i>
3126	
3127	
3128	
3129	A Confirm decision may be made only if PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the “Confirm-set”. The making of the decision shall be persistent (and if it is not possible to persist the decision, it is not made). If there is only one remaining Inferior in the “Confirm set” and PREPARE has not been sent to it, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may be sent to it.
3130	
3131	
3132	
3133	All remaining Inferiors that are not in the Confirm set shall be cancelled.
3134	If a Confirm decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.
3135	
3136	If a Cancel decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.
3137	
3138	If “report-hazard” was “true”, TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED shall be sent to the “reply-address” after CONFIRMED has been received from each Inferior in the Confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN from each and any Inferior not in the Confirm-set.
3139	
3140	
3141	If “report-hazard” was “true” and any HAZARD or contradictory message was received (i.e. CANCELLED from an Inferior in the Confirm-set or CONFIRMED from an Inferior not in the Confirm-set), an INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the “reply-address”.
3142	
3143	
3144	
3145	If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the “inferior-list” is unknown (does not correspond to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. The Decider shall not make a Confirm decision and shall not send CONFIRM to any Inferior.
3146	
3147	
3148	Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

- 3149 **General**
- 3150 **InvalidDecider**
- 3151 if Decider address is unknown
- 3152 **Redirect**
- 3153 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 3154 **UnknownTransaction**
- 3155 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 3156 **InvalidInferior**
- 3157 if one or more “inferior -identifiers” in the inferiors-list is unknown
- 3158 **WrongState**
- 3159 if a CANCEL_TRANSACTION has already been received .
- 3160 The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/all refers to a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message where
- 3161 the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/specific refers to a
- 3162 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

3163 **5.8.5 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED**

- 3164 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED to a Terminator in reply to
- 3165 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if all of the Confirm-set confirms (and, for a Cohesion, all other
- 3166 Inferiors Cancel) without reporting hazards, or if the Decider made a Confirm decision and the
- 3167 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazards” value of “false”.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

- 3168 **transaction-identifier**
- 3169 the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as
- 3170 a whole).
- 3171 **qualifiers**
- 3172 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3173 **target-address**
- 3174 the address to which the TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent., this will be the “reply-
- 3175 address” from the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message

3176 **5.8.6 CANCEL_TRANSACTION**

- 3177 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider at any time before CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)

Parameter	Type
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

- 3178 **transaction-identifier**
- 3179 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.
- 3180 **report-hazard**
- 3181 Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
- 3182 contradictory decisions within the Business Transaction. If "report-hazard" is "true", the
- 3183 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been
- 3184 received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If "report-
- 3185 hazard" is "false", the Decider will reply with TRANSACTION_CANCELLED immediately.
- 3186 **qualifiers**
- 3187 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3188 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**
- 3189 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
- 3190 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
- 3191 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:
- | Field | Type |
|--------------------------|--|
| inferior-identifier-list | A list of one or more Inferior-identifiers (each of which shall be one of those in the inferiors-list parameter), identifying which inferiors this item refers to. |
| qualifiers | A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the CANCEL messages. |
- 3192 For each Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list, the qualifiers are
- 3193 included in the CANCEL message sent to that Inferior.
- 3194 NOTE – If an Inferior has spontaneously cancelled, prepared or resigned, the qualifiers
- 3195 will not be sent.
- 3196 **target-address**
- 3197 the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the
- 3198 decider-address from the BEGUN message.
- 3199 **reply-address**
- 3200 the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message.
- 3201 The Business Transaction is cancelled – this is propagated to any remaining Inferiors by issuing
- 3202 CANCEL to them. No more Inferiors will be permitted to enrol.
- 3203 If "report-hazard" was "false", a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the
- 3204 "reply-address".
- 3205 If "report-hazard" was "true" and any HAZARD or CONFIRMED message was received, an
- 3206 INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the "reply-address".
- 3207 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION_CANCELLED shall be sent to the "reply-address"
- 3208 after CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from each Inferior.
- 3209 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "reply-address"):

- 3210 **General**
- 3211 **InvalidDecider**
- 3212 if Decider address is unknown
- 3213 **Redirect**
- 3214 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 3215 **UnknownTransaction**
- 3216 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 3217 **WrongState**
- 3218 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been received by this Composer.

3219 **5.8.7 CANCEL_INFERIORS**

3220 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider, but only if is a Cohesion Composer, at any time before
3221 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

- 3222 **transaction-identifier**
- 3223 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.
- 3224 **inferiors-list**
- 3225 defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider are to be cancelled, using the “inferior-
3226 identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its Role as Superior).
- 3227 **qualifiers**
- 3228 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3229 **target-address**
- 3230 the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the
3231 decider-address from the BEGUN message.
- 3232 **reply-address**
- 3233 the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message.
- 3234 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter, from which neither CANCELLED or
3235 RESIGNED has been received, the Decider shall issue CANCEL. It will reply to the Terminator,
3236 using the “reply-address” on the CANCEL_INFERIORS message, sending an
3237 INFERIOR_STATUSES message giving the status of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list
3238 parameter.
- 3239 Only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list are to be cancelled. Any other inferiors are
3240 unaffected by a CANCEL_INFERIORS. Further Inferiors may be enrolled.
- 3241 *Note – A CANCEL_INFERIORS for all of the currently enrolled Inferiors will leave*
3242 *the Cohesion ‘empty’, but permitted to continue with new Inferiors, if any enrol.*

- 3243 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond to
 3244 an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation option
 3245 whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-list".
 3246 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "reply-address"):
- 3247 **General**
 - 3248 **InvalidDecider**
 - 3249 if Decider address is unknown
 - 3250 **Redirect**
 - 3251 if the Decider now has a different "decider-address"
 - 3252 **UnknownTransaction**
 - 3253 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
 - 3254 **InvalidInferior**
 - 3255 if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown
 - 3256 **WrongState**
 - 3257 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been received by this
 3258 Composer.

3259 5.8.8 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED

- 3260 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CANCELLED to a Terminator in reply to
 3261 CANCEL_TRANSACTION or in reply to CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if the Decider decided to
 3262 Cancel. In both cases, TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is used only if all Inferiors cancelled
 3263 without reporting hazards or the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION had a
 3264 "report-hazard" value of "false".

Parameter

transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

- 3265 **transaction-identifier**
- 3266 the "transaction-identifier" as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as
 3267 a whole).
- 3268 **qualifiers**
- 3269 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3270 **target-address**
- 3271 the address to which the TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is sent. This will be the "reply-
 3272 address" from the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message.

3273 5.8.9 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES

- 3274 Sent to a Decider to ask it to report the status of its Inferiors with an INFERIOR_STATUSES
 3275 message. It can also be sent to any Actor with a "superior-address" or "inferior-address", asking it
 3276 about the status of that Transaction Tree Nodes Inferiors, if there are any. In this latter case, the
 3277 receiver may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused). If it is prepared to reply, but has
 3278 no Inferiors, it replies with an INFERIOR_STATUSES with an empty "status-list" parameter.

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

- 3279 **target-identifier**
- 3280 identifies the transaction (or Transaction Tree Node). When the message is used to a
3281 Decider, this will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message. Otherwise it will
3282 be the superior-identifier from a CONTEXT or an inferior-identifier from an ENROL
3283 message.
- 3284 **inferiors-list**
- 3285 defines which inferiors enrolled with the target are to be included in the
3286 INFERIOR_STATUSES, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the
3287 Decider (in its Role as Superior). If the list is absent, the status of all enrolled Inferiors will
3288 be reported.
- 3289 **qualifiers**
- 3290 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3291 **target-address**
- 3292 the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. When used to a
3293 Decider, this will be the “decider-address” from the BEGUN message. Otherwise it may
3294 be a “superior-address” from a CONTEXT or “inferior-address” from an ENROL message.
- 3295 **reply-address**
- 3296 the address to which the replying INFERIOR_STATUSES is to be sent
- 3297 Types of FAULT possible (sent to reply-address):
- 3298 **General**
- 3299 **Redirect**
- 3300 if the intended target now has a different address
- 3301 **StatusRefused**
- 3302 if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this message. This
3303 “fault-type” shall not be issued when a Decider receives REQUEST_STATUSES from the
3304 Terminator.
- 3305 **UnknownTransaction**
- 3306 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 3307 The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/all refers to a REQUEST_STATUS with the
3308 inferiors-list absent. The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS/specific refers to a
3309 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS with the inferiors-list present.

3310 **5.8.10 INFERIOR_STATUSES**

- 3311 Sent by a Decider to report the status of all or some of its inferiors in response to a
3312 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, PREPARE_INFERIORS, CANCEL_INFERIORS,
3313 CANCEL_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true” and CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
3314 with “report-hazard” value of “true”. It is also used by any Actor in response to a received
3315 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to report the status of inferiors, if there are any.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status-list	Set of Status items - see below
general-qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3316 **responders-identifier**

3317 the target-identifier used on the REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.

3318 **status-list**

3319 contains a number of Status-items, each reporting the status of one of the inferiors of the
3320 Decider. The fields of a Status-item are

Field	Type
inferior-identifier	Inferior-identifier, identifying which inferior this Status-item contains information for.
status	One of the status values below (these are a subset of those for STATUS)
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers as received from the particular inferior or associated with the inferior in earlier messages (e.g. an Inferior name qualifier).

3321 The status value reports the current status of the particular inferior, as known to the
3322 Decider (Composer or Coordinator). Values are:

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>resigned</i>	RESIGNED has been received from the Inferior
<i>preparing</i>	PREPARE has been sent to the inferior, none of PREPARED, RESIGNED, CANCELLED, HAZARD have been received
<i>prepared</i>	PREPARED has been received
<i>autonomously confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received, no completion message has been sent
<i>autonomously cancelled</i>	PREPARED had been received, and since then CANCELLED has been received but no completion message has been sent
<i>confirming</i>	CONFIRM has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/response has been received
<i>cancelling</i>	CANCEL has been sent, no outcome reply has been received

status value	Meaning
<i>cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received, and PREPARED was not received previously
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Confirm had been ordered (and may have been sent), but CANCELLED was received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Cancel had been ordered (and may have been sent) but CONFIRM/auto was received
<i>hazard</i>	A HAZARD message has been received
<i>invalid</i>	No such inferior is enrolled (used only in reply to a REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/specific)

3323

3324 **general-qualifiers**

3325 standardised or other qualifiers applying to the INFERIOR_STATUSES as a whole. Each
3326 Status-item contains a “qualifiers” field containing qualifiers applying to (and received
3327 from) the particular Inferior.

3328 **target-address**

3329 the address to which the INFERIOR_STATUSES is sent. This will be the “reply-address”
3330 on the received message

3331 If the inferiors-list parameter was present on the received message, only the inferiors identified by
3332 that parameter shall have their status reported in status-list of this message. If the inferiors-list
3333 parameter was absent, the status of all enrolled inferiors shall be reported, except that an inferior
3334 that had been reported as *cancelled* or *resigned* on a previous INFERIOR_STATUSES message
3335 **may** be omitted (sender’s option).

3336 **5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages**

3337 The following combinations of messages form related groups, for which the meaning of the group
3338 is not just the aggregate of the meanings of the messages. The “&” notation is used to indicate
3339 relatedness. Messages appearing in parentheses in the names of groups in this section indicate
3340 messages that may or may not be present. The notation A & B / & C in a group name in this
3341 section indicates a group that contains A and B, or A and C, or A, B and C, possibly with any of
3342 those appearing more than once.

3343 **5.9.1 CONTEXT & Application Message**

3344 **Meaning:** the transmission of the Application Message is deemed to be part of the Business
3345 Transaction identified by the CONTEXT. The exact effect of this for application work implied by
3346 the transmission of the message is determined by the application – in many cases, it will mean
3347 the effects of the Application Message are to be subject to the outcome delivered to an enrolled
3348 Inferior, thus requiring the enrolment of a new Inferior if no appropriate Inferior is enrolled or if the
3349 CONTEXT is for cohesion.

3350 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the Application Message. It is not required that the
3351 application address be a BTP Address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined “additional
3352 information” field – the Application Protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar
3353 construct).

3354 There may be multiple Application Messages related to a single CONTEXT message. All the
3355 Application Messages so related are deemed to be part of the Business Transaction identified by
3356 the CONTEXT. This specification does not imply any further relatedness among the Application
3357 Messages themselves (though the application might).

3358 The Actor that sends the group shall retain knowledge of the Superior address in the CONTEXT.
3359 If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the Actor shall also keep track of transmitted CONTEXTs
3360 for which no CONTEXT_REPLY has been received.

3361 If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the Actor receiving the CONTEXT shall ensure that a
3362 CONTEXT_REPLY message is sent back to the “reply-address” of the CONTEXT with the
3363 appropriate completion status.

3364 *Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT and one or more*
3365 *Application Messages depends on the binding to the Carrier Protocol. It is not*
3366 *necessary that the CONTEXT and Application Messages be closely associated “on*
3367 *the wire” (or even sent on the same connection) – some kind of referencing*
3368 *mechanism may be used.*

3369 5.9.2 CONTEXT_REPLY & Application Message

3370 **Meaning:** This related group applies only if the CONTEXT_REPLY message contains an inferior
3371 identifier parameter. In this case the transmission of the Application Message (and application
3372 effects implied by its transmission) has been associated with the Inferior whose identifier is in the
3373 CONTEXT_REPLY and the effects will be subject to the outcome delivered to that Inferior. As for
3374 CONTEXT & Application message, the exact effect of this for application work implied by the
3375 transmission of the message is determined by the application.

3376 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the Application Message. It is not required that the
3377 application address be a BTP Address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined “additional
3378 information” field – the Application Protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar
3379 construct).

3380 *Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT_REPLY and one or*
3381 *more Application Messages depends on the binding to the Carrier Protocol*

3382 5.9.3 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL

3383 **Meaning:** the enrolment of the Inferior identified in the ENROL is to be performed with the
3384 Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY is replying to. If the
3385 “completion-status” of CONTEXT_REPLY is “related”, failure of this enrolment shall prevent the
3386 confirmation of the Business Transaction.

3387 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the “reply-
3388 address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply application
3389 exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3390 The “target-address” of the ENROL message is omitted.

3391 The Actor receiving the related group will use the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT
3392 sent earlier to forward the ENROL. When doing so, it changes the ENROL to ask for a response
3393 (if it was an ENROL/no-rsp-req) and supplies its own address as the “reply-address”,
3394 remembering the original “reply-address” if there was one.

3395 If ENROLLED is received and the original received ENROL was ENROL/rsp-req, the ENROLLED
3396 is forwarded back to the original “reply-address”.

3397 If this attempt fails (i.e. ENROLLED is not received), and the “completion-status” of the
3398 CONTEXT_REPLY was “related”, the Actor is required to ensure that the Superior does not
3399 proceed to confirmation. How this is achieved is an implementation option, but must take account
3400 of the possibility that direct communication with the Superior may fail. (One method is to prevent
3401 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION being sent to the Superior (in its Role as Decider); another is to enrol
3402 as another Inferior before sending the original CONTEXT out with an Application Message). If the
3403 Superior is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer, an enrolment failure must ensure the sub-
3404 coordinator does not send PREPARED to its own Superior.

3405 If the Actor receiving the related group is also the Superior (i.e. it has the same binding address),
3406 the explicit forwarding of the ENROL is not required, but the resultant effect – that if enrolment
3407 fails the Superior does not Confirm or issue PREPARED – shall be the same.

3408 A CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL group may contain multiple ENROL messages, for several
3409 Inferiors. Each ENROL shall be forwarded and an ENROLLED reply received before the Superior
3410 is allowed to Confirm if the “completion-status” in the CONTEXT_REPLY was “related”.

3411 When the group is constructed, if the CONTEXT had “superior-type” value of “atom”, the
3412 “completion-status” of the CONTEXT_REPLY shall be “related”. If the “superior-type” was
3413 “cohesive”, the “completion-status” shall be “incomplete” or “related” (as required by the
3414 application). If the value is “incomplete”, the Actor receiving the group shall forward the ENROLS,
3415 but is not required to prevent confirmation (though it may do so).

3416 **5.9.4 CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED**

3417 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY and either or both of
3418 PREPARED and CANCELLED, with or without ENROL.

3419 **Meaning:** If ENROL is present, the meaning and required processing is the same as for
3420 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL. The PREPARED or CANCELLED message(s) are forwarded to
3421 the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY is replying to.

3422 *Note – the combination of CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & CANCELLED may be*
3423 *used to force cancellation of an atom*

3424 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the “reply-
3425 address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply application
3426 exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3427 The “target-address” of the PREPARED and CANCELLED message is omitted – they will be sent
3428 to the Superior identified in the earlier CONTEXT message.

3429 The Actor receiving the group forwards the PREPARED or CANCELLED message to the Superior
3430 in as for an ENROL, using the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT sent earlier, except
3431 there is no reply required from the Superior.

3432 If (as is usual) an ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED message are for the same Inferior,
3433 the ENROL shall be sent first, but the Actor need not wait for the ENROLLED to come back
3434 before sending the PREPARED or CANCELLED (so an ENROL+PREPARED bundle from this
3435 Actor to the Superior could be used).

3436 The group can contain multiple ENROL, PREPARED and CANCELLED messages. Each
3437 PREPARED and CANCELLED message will be for a different Inferior. There is no constraint on
3438 the order of their forwarding, except that ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED for the same
3439 Inferior shall be delivered to the Superior in the order ENROL first, followed by the other message
3440 for that Inferior.

3441 **5.9.5 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & Application Message (&** 3442 **PREPARED)**

3443 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY, ENROL and an Application
3444 Message. PREPARED may or may not be present in the related group.

3445 **Meaning:** the relation between the BTP messages is as for the preceding groups. The
3446 transmission of the Application Message (and application effects implied by its transmission) has
3447 been associated with the Inferior identified by the ENROL and will be subject to the outcome
3448 delivered to that Inferior.

3449 **target-address:** the “target-address” of the group is the “target-address” of the
3450 CONTEXT_REPLY which shall also be the “target-address” of the Application Message. The
3451 ENROL and PREPARED messages do not contain their “target-address” parameters.

3452 The processing of ENROL and PREPARED messages is the same as for the previous groups.
 3453 This group can be used when participation in Business Transaction (normally a cohesion), is
 3454 initiated by the service (Inferior) side, which fetches or acquires the CONTEXT, with some
 3455 associated application semantic, performs some work for the transaction and sends an
 3456 Application Message with a related ENROL. The CONTEXT_REPLY allows the addressing of the
 3457 application (and the CONTEXT_REPLY) to be distinct from that of the Superior.
 3458 The Actor receiving the group may associate the “inferior-identifier” received on the ENROL with
 3459 the Application Message in a manner that is visible to the application receiving the message (e.g.
 3460 for subsequent use in Terminator:Decider exchanges).

3461 **5.10 Standard qualifiers**

3462 The following qualifiers are expected to be of general use to many applications and
 3463 environments. The URI “[http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-
 3464 btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd)” is used in the Qualifier group value for the qualifiers
 3465 defined here.

3466 **5.10.1 Transaction timelimit**

3467 The transaction timelimit allows the Superior (or an Application Element initiating the Business
 3468 Transaction) to indicate the expected length of the active phase, and thus give an indication to
 3469 the Inferior of when it would be appropriate to initiate cancellation if the active phase appears to
 3470 continue too long. The time limit ends (the clock stops) when the Inferior decides to be prepared
 3471 and issues PREPARED to the Superior.

3472 It should be noted that the expiry of the time limit does not change the permissible actions of the
 3473 Inferior. At any time prior to deciding to be prepared (for an Inferior), the Inferior is **permitted** to
 3474 initiate cancellation for internal reasons. The timelimit gives an indication to the entity of when it
 3475 will be useful to exercise this right.

3476 The qualifier is propagated on a CONTEXT message.

3477 The “Qualifier name” shall be “`transaction-timelimit`”.

3478 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
timelimit	Integer

3479

3480 **timelimit**

3481 indicates the maximum (further) duration, expressed as whole seconds from the time of
 3482 transmission of the containing CONTEXT, of the active phase of the Business
 3483 Transaction.

3484 **5.10.2 Inferior timeout**

3485 This qualifier allows an Inferior to limit the duration of its “promise”, when sending PREPARED,
 3486 that it will maintain the ability to Confirm or Cancel the effects of all associated operations.
 3487 Without this qualifier, an Inferior is expected to retain the ability to Confirm or Cancel indefinitely.
 3488 If the timeout does expire, the Inferior is released from its promise and can apply the decision
 3489 indicated in the qualifier.

3490 It should be noted that BTP recognises the possibility that an Inferior may be forced to apply a
 3491 Confirm or Cancel decision before the CONFIRM or CANCEL is received and before this timeout
 3492 expires (or if this qualifier is not used). Such a decision is termed a heuristic decision, and (as
 3493 with other transaction mechanisms), is considered to be an exceptional event. As with heuristic
 3494 decisions, the taking of an autonomous decision by an Inferior **subsequent** to the expiry of this

3495 timeout is liable to cause contradictory decisions across the Business Transaction. BTP ensures
3496 that at least the occurrence of such a contradiction will be (eventually) reported to the Superior of
3497 the Business Transaction. BTP treats “true” heuristic decisions and autonomous decisions after
3498 timeout the same way – in fact, the expiry in this timeout does not cause a qualitative (state table)
3499 change in what can happen, but rather a step change in the probability that it will.

3500 The expiry of the timeout does not strictly require that the Inferior immediately invokes the
3501 intended decision, only that it is at liberty to do so. An implementation may choose to only apply
3502 the decision if there is contention for the underlying resource, for example. Nevertheless,
3503 Superiors are recommended to avoid relying on this and ensure that decisions for the Business
3504 Transaction are made before these timeouts expire (and allow a margin of error for network
3505 latency etc.).

3506 The qualifier may be present on a PREPARED message. If the PREPARED message has the
3507 “default-is cancel” parameter “true”, then the “IntendedDecision” field of this qualifier shall have
3508 the value “cancel”.

3509 The “Qualifier name” shall be “inferior-timeout”.

3510 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
timeout	Integer
intended-decision	“confirm” or “cancel”

3511

3512 **timeout**

3513 indicates how long, expressed as whole seconds from the time of transmission of the
3514 carrying message, the Inferior intends to maintain its ability to either Confirm or Cancel
3515 the effects of the associated operations, as ordered by the receiving Superior.

3516 **intended-decision**

3517 indicates which outcome will be applied, if the timeout completes and an autonomous
3518 decision is made.

3519 **5.10.3 Minimum inferior timeout**

3520 This qualifier allows a Superior to constrain the Inferior timeout qualifier received from the Inferior.
3521 If a Superior knows that the decision for the Business Transaction will not be determined for
3522 some period, it can require that Inferiors do not send PREPARED messages with Inferior
3523 timeouts that would expire before then. An Inferior that is unable or unwilling to send a
3524 PREPARED message with a longer (or no) timeout **should** Cancel, and reply with CANCELLED.

3525 The qualifier may be present on a CONTEXT, ENROLLED or PREPARE message. If present on
3526 more than one, and with different values of the MinimumTimeout field, the value on ENROLLED
3527 shall prevail over that on CONTEXT and the value on PREPARE shall prevail over either of the
3528 others.

3529 The “Qualifier name” shall be “minimum-inferior-timeout”.

3530 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
minimum-timeout	Integer

3531

3532 **minimum-timeout**

3533 is the minimum value of timeout, expressed as whole seconds, that will be acceptable in
3534 the Inferior timeout qualifier on an answering PREPARED message.

3535

5.10.4 Inferior name

3536 This qualifier allows an Enroller to supply a name for the Inferior that will be visible on
3537 INFERIOR_STATUSES and thus allow the Terminator to determine which Inferior (of the
3538 Composer or Coordinator) is related to which application work. This is in addition to the “inferior-
3539 identifier” field. The name can be human-readable and can also be used in fault tracing,
3540 debugging and auditing.

3541 The name is never used by the BTP Actors themselves to identify each other or to direct
3542 messages. (The BTP Actors use the addresses and the identifiers in the message parameters for
3543 those purposes.)

3544 This specification makes no requirement that the names are unambiguous within any scope
3545 (unlike the globally unambiguous “inferior-identifier” on ENROLLED and BEGUN). Other
3546 specifications, including those defining use of BTP with a particular application may place
3547 requirements on the use and form of the names. (This may include reference to information
3548 passed in Application Messages or in other, non-standardised, qualifiers.)

3549 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN, ENROL and in the “qualifiers” field of a Status-item in
3550 INFERIOR_STATUSES. It is present on BEGIN only if there is a related CONTEXT; if present,
3551 the same qualifier value **should** be included in the consequent ENROL. If
3552 INFERIOR_STATUSES includes a Status-item for an Inferior whose ENROL had an inferior-
3553 name qualifier, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the Status-item.

3554 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “inferior-name”

3555 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
inferior-name	String

3556

inferior-name

3558 the name assigned to the enrolling Inferior.

3559

5.10.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants

3560 The cancel-on-zero-participants qualifier causes a cohesion composer to be automatically
3561 cancelled if its list of registered participants becomes zero after either a PREPARE_INFERIORS
3562 or CANCEL_INFERIORS message is received. This cancellation happens if the value for cancel-
3563 on-zero-participants is set to true, and the result will be a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED
3564 message returned to the terminator as a reply to the PREPARE_INFERIORS or
3565 CANCEL_INFERIORS message, instead of INFERIOR_STATUSES.

3566 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN if the “transaction-type” is “cohesion” and on
3567 PREPARE_INFERIORS and CANCEL_INFERIORS. If present on PREPARE_INFERIORS or
3568 CANCEL_INFERIORS the value overrides any previous value.

3569 If the qualifier is not present on any message, a cohesion composer shall behave as if the value
3570 was “false”.

3571 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “cancel-on-zero-participants”

3572 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
value	“true” or “false”

3573 **5.10.6 Expected-time-till-state-change**

3574 The expected-time-till-state-change qualifier can be sent on any message to give an indication of
3575 when the sender anticipates it will undergo a state change that would trigger a further message.
3576 For example, an Inferior receiving PREPARE that triggers application work that will take an hour
3577 to complete could send INFERIOR_STATE/prepare-received with an expected-time-to-state-
3578 change of 4000 seconds (giving itself some margin for error). The Superior could use this
3579 information to modify its polling and retry algorithm.

3580 Values sent on this qualifier are indications only. Sending this qualifier never causes a state
3581 change in either party. Sending does not prevent the sender from changing state much earlier,
3582 nor inhibit the sending of any message reflecting such a change; neither does it commit the
3583 sender to changing state at the time stated. The persistence and recovery requirements implied
3584 by BTP are not affected.

3585 The "Qualifier -name" shall be "expected-time-till-state-change"

3586 The "Content" shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
expected-time	Integer

3587

3588 **expected-time**

3589 is a time expressed as whole seconds, within which the sender anticipates that it will
3590 undergo a state change triggered by events other than the receipt of messages on this
3591 BTP relationship.

3592

6 State Tables

3593 The state tables deal with the state transitions of the Superior and Inferior roles and which
3594 message can be sent and received in each state. The state tables directly cover only a single, bi-
3595 lateral Superior:Inferior relationship. The interactions between, for example, multiple Inferiors of a
3596 single Superior that will apply the same decision to all or some of them, are dealt with in the
3597 definitions of the “decision” events which also specify when changes are made to persistent state
3598 information (see below).

3599 There are two state tables, one for Superior, one for Inferior. States are identified by a letter-digit
3600 pair, with upper-case letters for the superior, lower-case for the inferior. The same letter is used to
3601 group states which have the same, or similar, persistent state, with the digit indicating volatile
3602 state changes or minor variations. Corresponding upper and lower-case letters are used to
3603 identify (approximately) corresponding Superior and Inferior states.

3604 The Inferior table includes events occurring both at the Inferior as such and at the associated
3605 Enroller, as the Enroller’s actions are constrained by and constrain the Inferior Role itself.

3606 In the state tables, each side is either waiting to make a decision or can send a message. For
3607 some states, the message to be sent is a repetition of a regular message; for other states, the
3608 INFERIOR_STATE or SUPERIOR_STATE message can be sent, requesting a response.
3609 Normally, on entry to a state that allows the sending of any message other than one of the
3610 *_STATE messages, the implementation will send that message – failure to do so will cause the
3611 relationship to lock up. The message can be resent if the implementation determines that the
3612 original message (or the next message sent in reply) may have been lost.

3613 6.1 Status queries

3614 In BTP the messages SUPERIOR_STATE and INFERIOR_STATE are available to prompt the
3615 Peer to report its current state by repeating the previous message (when this is allowed) or by
3616 sending the other *_STATE message. The “reply_requested” parameter of these messages
3617 distinguishes between their use as a prompt and as a reply. An implementation receiving a
3618 *_STATE message with “reply_requested” as “true” is not required to reply immediately – it may
3619 choose to delay any reply until a decision event occurs and then send the appropriate new
3620 message (e.g. on receiving INFERIOR_STATE/prepared/y while in state E1, a superior is
3621 permitted to delay until it has performed “decide to confirm” or “decide to cancel”). However, this
3622 may cause the other side to repeatedly send interrogatory *_STATE messages.

3623 Note that a Superior (or some entity standing in for a now-extinct Superior) uses
3624 SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown to reply to messages received from an Inferior where the
3625 Superior:Inferior relationship is in an unknown (using state “Y1”). The *_STATE messages with a
3626 “state” value “inaccessible” can be used as a reply when **any** message is received and the
3627 implementation is temporarily unable to determine whether the relationship is known or what the
3628 state is. Receipt of the *_STATE/inaccessible messages is not shown in the tables and has no
3629 effect on the state at the receiving side (though it may cause the implementation to resend its
3630 own message after some interval of its own choosing).

3631 6.2 Decision events

3632 The persistent state changes (equivalent to logging in a regular transaction system) and some
3633 other events are modelled as “decision events” (e.g. “decide to confirm”, “decide to be prepared”).
3634 The exact nature of the real events and changes in an implementation that are modelled by these
3635 events depends on the position of the Superior or Inferior within the Business Transaction and on
3636 features of the implementation (e.g. making of a persistent record of the decision means that the
3637 information will survive at least some failures that otherwise lose state information, but the level of

3638 survival depends on the purpose of the implementation). Table 3 and Table 4 define the decision
3639 events.

3640 The Superior event “decide to prepare” is considered semi-persistent. Since the sending of
3641 PREPARE indicates that the application exchange (to associate operations with the Inferior) is
3642 complete, it is not meaningful for the Superior:Inferior relationship to revert to an earlier state
3643 corresponding to an incomplete application exchange. However, implementations are not
3644 required to make the sending of PREPARE persistent in terms of recovery – a Superior that
3645 experiences failure after sending PREPARE may, on recovery, have no information about the
3646 transaction, in which case it is considered to be in the completed state (Z), which will imply the
3647 cancellation of the Inferior and its associated operations.

3648 Where a Superior is an Intermediate (i.e. is itself an Inferior to another Superior entity), in a
3649 Transaction Tree, its “decide to confirm” and “decide to cancel” decisions will in fact be the receipt
3650 of a CONFIRM or CANCEL instruction from its own Superior, without necessary change of local
3651 persistent information (which would combine both superior and inferior information, pointing both
3652 up and down the tree).

3653 **6.3 Disruptions – failure events**

3654 Failure events are modelled as “disruption”. A failure and the subsequent recovery will (or may)
3655 cause a change of state. The disruption events in the state tables model different extents of loss
3656 of state information. An implementation is **not** required to exhibit all the possible disruption
3657 events, but it is not allowed to exhibit state transitions that do not correspond to a possible
3658 disruption. The different levels of disruption describe legitimate states for the endpoint to be in
3659 after it has been restored to normal functioning. The absence of a destination state for the
3660 disruption events means that such a transition is not legitimate – thus, for example, an Inferior
3661 that has decided to be prepared will always recover to the same state, by virtue of the information
3662 persisted in the “decide to be prepared” event.

3663 In addition to the disruption events in the tables, there is an implicit “disruption 0” event, which
3664 involves possible interruption of service and loss of messages in transit, but no change of state
3665 (either because no state information was lost, or because recovery from persistent information
3666 restores the implementation to the same state). The “disruption 0” event would typically be an
3667 appropriate abstraction for a communication failure.

3668 **6.4 Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication** 3669 **mechanism**

3670 The empty cells in state table represent events that cannot happen. For events corresponding to
3671 sending a message or any of the decision events, this prohibition is absolute – e.g. a conformant
3672 implementation in the Superior active state “B1” will not send CONFIRM. For events
3673 corresponding to receiving a message, the interpretation depends on the properties of the
3674 underlying communications mechanism.

3675 For all communication mechanisms, it is assumed that:

- 3676 • the two directions of the Superior:Inferior communication are not synchronised – that is
3677 messages travelling in opposite directions can cross each other to any degree; any number
3678 of messages may be in transit in either direction; and
- 3679 • messages may be lost arbitrarily.

3680 If the communication mechanisms guarantee ordered delivery (i.e. that messages, if delivered at
3681 all, are delivered to the receiver in the order they were sent), then receipt of a message in a state
3682 where the corresponding cell is empty indicates that the far-side has sent a message out of order
3683 – a FAULT message with the “fault-type” “WrongState” can be returned.

3684 If the communication mechanisms cannot guarantee ordered delivery, then messages received
3685 where the corresponding cell is empty should be ignored. Assuming the far-side is conformant,

3686 these messages can assumed to be “stale” and have been overtaken by messages sent later but
 3687 already delivered. (If the far-side is non-conformant, there is a problem anyway).

3688 **6.5 Meaning of state table events**

3689 The tables in this section define the events (rows) in the state tables. Table 2 defines the events
 3690 corresponding to sending or receiving BTP messages and the disruption events. Table 3
 3691 describes the decision events for an Inferior, Table 4 those for a Superior.

3692 The decision events for a Superior, defined in Table 4 cannot be specified without reference to
 3693 other Inferiors to which it is Superior, and to its relation with the application or other entity that
 3694 (acting ultimately on behalf of the application) drives it.

3695 The term “remaining Inferiors” refers to any Actors to which this endpoint is Superior, and which
 3696 are to be treated as an atomic decision unit with (and thus including) the Inferior on this
 3697 relationship. If the CONTEXT for this Superior:Inferior relationship had a “superior-type” of “atom”,
 3698 this will be all Inferiors established with same Superior address and “superior-identifier” except
 3699 those from which RESIGN has been received. If the CONTEXT had “superior-type” of “cohesion”,
 3700 the “remaining Inferiors” excludes any that it has been determined will be cancelled, as well as
 3701 any that have resigned – in other words it includes only those for which a Confirm decision is still
 3702 possible or has been made. The determination of exactly which Inferiors are “remaining Inferiors”
 3703 in a Cohesion is determined, in some way, by the application. The term “Other remaining
 3704 Inferiors” excludes this Inferior on this relationship. A Superior with a single Inferior will have no
 3705 “other remaining Inferiors”.

3706 In order to ensure that the confirmation decision is delivered to all remaining Inferiors, despite
 3707 failures, the Superior must persistently record which Inferiors these are (i.e. their addresses and
 3708 identifiers). It must also either record that the decision is Confirm, or ensure that the Confirm
 3709 decision (if there is one) is persistently recorded somewhere else, and that it will be told about it.
 3710 This latter would apply if the Superior were also BTP Inferior to another entity which persisted a
 3711 Confirm decision (or recursively deferred it still higher). However, since there is no requirement
 3712 that the Superior be also a BTP Inferior to any other entity, the behaviour of asking another entity
 3713 to make (and persist) the Confirm decision is termed "offering confirmation" - the Superior offers
 3714 the possible confirmation of itself, and its remaining Inferiors to some other entity. If that entity (or
 3715 something higher up) then does make and persist a Confirm decision, the Superior is "instructed
 3716 to confirm" (which is equivalent BTP CONFIRM).

3717 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may request a Superior
 3718 to prepare an Inferior (or all Inferiors). This typically implies that there will be no more operations
 3719 associated with the Inferior. Following a request to prepare all remaining Inferiors, the Superior
 3720 may offer confirmation to the entity that requested the prepare. (If the Superior is also a BTP
 3721 Inferior, its superior can be considered an entity acting on behalf of the application.)

3722 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may also request
 3723 confirmation. This means the Superior is to attempt to make and persist a Confirm decision itself,
 3724 rather than offer confirmation.

3725 **Table 2 : send, receive and disruption events**

Event name	Meaning
send/receive ENROL/rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = true
send/receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = false
send/receive RESIGN/rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = true
send/receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = false
send/receive PREPARED	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = false
send/receive PREPARED/cancel	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = true

Event name	Meaning
send/receive CONFIRMED/auto	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/response	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = false
send/receive HAZARD	send/receive HAZARD
send/receive INF_STATE/***/y	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true
send/receive INF_STATE/***	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false
send/receive SUP_STATE/***/y	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true (“prepared-rcvd” represents “prepared-received”)
send/receive SUP_STATE/***	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false (“prepared-rcvd” represents “prepared-received”)
disruption ***	Loss of state– new state is state applying after any local recovery processes complete

3726

3727

Table 3 : Decision events for Inferior

Event name	Meaning
decide to resign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any associated operations have had no effect (data state is unchanged).
decide to be prepared	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations can be confirmed or cancelled; information to retain confirm/cancel ability has been made persistent
decide to be prepared/cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As “decide to be prepared”; the persistent information specifies that the default action will be to cancel
decide to confirm autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to confirm autonomously has been made persistent; the effects of associated operations will be confirmed regardless of failures
decide to cancel autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to Cancel autonomously has been made persistent the effects of associated operations will be cancelled regardless of failures
apply ordered confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations have been confirmed; Persistent information is effectively removed
remove persistent information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Persistent information is effectively removed;

Event name	Meaning
detect problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For at least some of the associated operations, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ EITHER they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; ○ OR it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed; • AND information about this is not persistent.
detect and record problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For at least some of the associated operations, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ EITHER they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; ○ OR it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed; • AND <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ EITHER information recording this has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate) ○ OR the detection itself is persistent. (i.e. will be re-detected on recovery)

3728

3729

Table 4: Decision events for a Superior

Event name	Meaning
decide to confirm one-phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All associated Application Messages to be sent to the service have been sent; • There are no other remaining Inferiors • If an Atom, all enrolments that would create other Inferiors have completed (no outstanding CONTEXT_REPLYS) • The Superior has been requested to confirm
decide to prepare	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All associated Application Messages to be sent to the service have been sent; • The Superior has been requested to prepare this Inferior
decide to confirm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ PREPARED or PREPARED/cancel has been received from all other remaining Inferiors; AND ○ Superior has been requested to confirm; AND ○ persistent information records the confirm decision and identifies all remaining Inferiors; • Or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ persistent information records an offer of confirmation and has been instructed to confirm

Event name	Meaning
decide to cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superior has not offered confirmation; OR • Superior has offered confirmation and has been instructed to Cancel; OR • Superior has offered confirmation but has made an autonomous cancellation decision
remove confirm information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Persistent information has been effectively removed;
record contradiction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information recording the contradiction has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate)

3730

3731 6.6 Persistent information

3732 Persisted information (especially prepared information at an Inferior, confirm information at a
3733 Superior) may include qualifications of the state carried in Qualifiers of the corresponding
3734 message (e.g. inferior timeouts in prepared information). It may also include application-specific
3735 information (especially in Inferiors) to allow the future confirmation or cancellation of the
3736 associated operations. In some cases it will also include information allowing an Application
3737 Message sent with a BTP message (e.g. PREPARED) to be repeated.

3738 The “effective” removal of persistent information allows for the possibility that the information is
3739 retained (perhaps for audit and tracing purposes) but some change to the persistent information
3740 (as a whole) means that if there is a failure after such change, on recovery, the persistent
3741 information does not cause the endpoint to return the state it would have recovered to before the
3742 change.

3743 In all cases, the degree to which information described as “persistent” will survive failure is a
3744 configuration and implementation option. An implementation **should** describe the level of failure
3745 that it is capable of surviving. For applications manipulating information that is itself volatile (e.g.
3746 network configurations), there is no requirement to make the BTP state information more
3747 persistent than the application information.

3748 The degree of persistence of the recording of a hazard (problem) at an Inferior and recording of a
3749 detected contradiction at a Superior may be different from that applying to the persistent prepared
3750 and confirm information. Implementations and configuration may choose to pass hazard and
3751 contradiction information via management mechanisms rather than through BTP. Such passing of
3752 information to a management mechanism could be treated as “record problem” or “record
3753 contradiction”.

Table 5 : Superior states

State	summary
I1	CONTEXT created
A1	ENROLing
B1	ENROLLED (active)
B2	ENROLLED – repeat ENROL received
C1	resigning
D1	PREPARE sent
E1	PREPARED received
E2	PREPARED/cancel received
F1	CONFIRM sent
F2	completed after confirm
G1	Cancel decided
G2	CANCEL sent
G3	cancelling, RESIGN received
G4	both cancelled
H1	inferior autonomously confirmed
J1	Inferior autonomously cancelled
K1	confirmed, contradiction detected
L1	cancelled, contradiction detected
P1	hazard reported
P2	hazard reported in null state
P3	hazard reported after confirm decision
P4	hazard reported after Cancel decision
Q1	contradiction detected in null state
R1	Contradiction or hazard recorded
R2	completed after contradiction or hazard recorded
S1	one-phase confirm decided
Y1	completed queried
Z	completed and unknown

Table 6 : Inferior states

State	summary
i1	aware of CONTEXT
a1	enrolling
b1	enrolled
c1	resigning
d1	preparing
e1	prepared
e2	prepared,default to cancel
f1	confirming
f2	confirming after default cancel
g1	CANCEL received in prepared state
g2	CANCEL received in prepared/cancel state
h1	Autonomously confirmed
h2	autonomously confirmed, superior confirmed
j1	autonomously cancelled
j2	autonomously cancelled, superior cancelled
k1	autonomously cancelled, contradicted
k2	autonomously cancelled, CONTRADICTION received
l1	autonomously confirmed, contradicted
l2	autonomously confirmed, CONTRADICTION received
m1	confirmation applied
n1	cancelling
n2	cancelling after receiving PREPARE
p1	hazard detected, not recorded
p2	hazard detected in prepared state, not recorded
q1	hazard recorded
s1	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received after prepared state
s2	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received
s3	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, confirming
s4	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, cancelling
s5	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard detected
s6	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard recorded
x1	completed, presuming abort
x2	completed, presuming abort after prepared/cancel
y1	completed, queried
y2	completed, default cancel, a message received
y3	Completed after cancelled, a message received
z	completed
z1	completed with default cancel
z2	completed after cancellation

3758

6.7 Superior state table

3759

Table 7: Superior state table – active, resigning and prepared

	I1	A1	B1	B2	C1	D1	E1	E2
receive ENROL/rsp-req	A1	A1	B2	B2		D1		
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	B1		B1	B1		D1		
receive RESIGN/rsp-req	Y1		C1	C1	C1	C1		
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	Z		Z	Z	Z	Z		
receive PREPARED	Y1		E1	E1		E1	E1	
receive PREPARED/cancel	Y1		E2	E2		E2		E2
receive CONFIRMED/auto	Q1		H1	H1		H1	H1	
receive CONFIRMED/response								
receive CANCELLED	Y1		Z	Z		Z	J1	J1
receive HAZARD	P1	P1	P1	P1		P1	P1	P1
receive INF_STATE/active/y	Y1	A1	B1	B2		D1		
receive INF_STATE/active			B1	B2		D1		
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y						D1		
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd						D1		
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y								
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd								
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y								
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd								
receive INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z		
send ENROLLED		B1		B1				
send RESIGNED					Z			
send PREPARE						D1		
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE								
send CONFIRM								
send CANCEL								
send CONTRADICTION								
send SUP_STATE/active/y			B1					
send SUP_STATE/active			B1					
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							E1	E2
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							E1	E2
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y								
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
decide to confirm one-phase			S1	S1		S1	S1	S1
decide to prepare			D1	D1				
decide to confirm							F1	F1
decide to cancel		G1	G1	G1		G1	G1	Z
remove persistent information								
record contradiction								
disruption I	Z	Z	Z	Z	B1	Z	Z	Z
disruption II					Z		D1	D1
disruption III							B1	B1
disruption IV								

Table 8 : Superior state table -- confirming and cancelling

	F1	F2	G1	G2	G3	G4
receive ENROL/rsp-req			G1	G2		
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req			G1	G2		
receive RESIGN/rsp-req			G3	Z	G3	
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req			Z	Z	Z	
receive PREPARED	F1		G1	G2		
receive PREPARED/cancel	F1		G1	G2		
receive CONFIRMED/automatic	F1		L1	L1		
receive CONFIRMED/response	F2	F2				
receive CANCELLED	K1		G4	Z		G4
receive HAZARD	P3		P4	P4		
receive INF_STATE/active/y			G1	G2		
receive INF_STATE/active			G1	G2		
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y			G1	G2		
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd			G1	G2		
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y	F1					
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd	F1					
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y				G2		
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd				G2		
receive INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z
send ENROLLED						
send RESIGNED						
send PREPARE						
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE						
send CONFIRM	F1					
send CANCEL			G2	G2	Z	Z
send CONTRADICTION						
send SUP_STATE/active/y						
send SUP_STATE/active						
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y						
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known						
send SUP_STATE/unknown						
decide to confirm one-phase						
decide to prepare						
decide to confirm						
decide to cancel						
remove persistent information		Z				
record contradiction						
disruption I		F1	Z	Z	Z	Z
disruption II					G2	G2
disruption III						
disruption IV						

Table 9 : Superior state table – autonomous decisions

	H1	J1	K1	L1
receive ENROL/rsp-req receive ENROL/no-rsp-req receive RESIGN/rsp-req receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req receive PREPARED receive PREPARED/cancel receive CONFIRMED/auto receive CONFIRMED/response receive CANCELLED receive HAZARD	H1	J1	K1	L1
receive INF_STATE/active/y receive INF_STATE/active receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd receive INF_STATE/unknown				
send ENROLLED send RESIGNED send PREPARE send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE send CONFIRM send CANCEL send CONTRADICTION				
send SUP_STATE/active/y send SUP_STATE/active send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known send SUP_STATE/unknown	H1 H1	J1 J1	K1 K1	L1 L1
decide to confirm one-phase decide to prepare decide to confirm decide to cancel remove persistent information record contradiction	S1 F1 L1	K1 G4	R1	R1
disruption I disruption II disruption III disruption IV	Z E1 D1 B1	Z E1 D1 B1	F1	Z G2

Table 10 : Superior state table – hazard

	P1	P2	P3	P4	Q1	R1	R2
receive ENROL/rsp-req							
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req							
receive RESIGN/rsp-req							
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req							
receive PREPARED							
receive PREPARED/cancel							
receive CONFIRMED/auto					Q1	R1	R1
receive CONFIRMED/response					Z	R2	R2
receive CANCELLED						R1	R1
receive HAZARD	P1	P2	P3	P4		R1	R1
receive INF_STATE/active/y							
receive INF_STATE/active							
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y							
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd							
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y							
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd							
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y							
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd							
receive INF_STATE/unknown	P1	P2		P4		R2	R2
send ENROLLED							
send RESIGNED							
send PREPARE							
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE							
send CONFIRM							
send CANCEL							
send CONTRADICTION						R2	
send SUP_STATE/active/y							
send SUP_STATE/active							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y	P1		P3	P4			
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known	P1		P3	P4			
send SUP_STATE/unknown							
decide to confirm one-phase							
decide to prepare							
decide to confirm							
decide to cancel							
remove persistent information							Z
record contradiction	R1	R1	R1	R1	R1		
disruption I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z		R1
disruption II	D1		F1	G2			
disruption III	B1						
disruption IV							

Table 11 : Superior state table – one phase confirm and completing

	S1	Y1	Z
receive ENROL/rsp-req	S1	Y1	Y1
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	S1	Y1	Y1
receive RESIGN/rsp-req	Z	Y1	Y1
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z	Z
receive PREPARED	S1	Y1	Y1
receive PREPARED/cancel	S1	Y1	Y1
receive CONFIRMED/auto	S1	Q1	Q1
receive CONFIRMED/response	Z	Z	Z
receive CANCELLED	Z	Y1	Y1
receive HAZARD	Z	P2	P2
receive INF_STATE/active/y	S1	Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/active	S1	Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y	S1	Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd	S1	Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y			
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd			
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y		Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd		Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z	Z
send ENROLLED			
send RESIGNED			
send PREPARE			
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	S1		
send CONFIRM			
send CANCEL			
send CONTRADICTION			
send SUP_STATE/active/y			
send SUP_STATE/active			
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y			
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known			
send SUP_STATE/unknown		Z	
decide to confirm one-phase			
decide to prepare			
decide to confirm			
decide to cancel			
remove persistent information			
record contradiction			
disruption I	Z	Z	
disruption II			
disruption III			
disruption IV			

6.8 Inferior state table

Table 12: Inferior state table – active, resigning and prepared

	i1	a1	b1	c1	d1	e1	e2
send ENROL/rsp-req	a1	a1					
send ENROL/no-rsp-req	b1		b1				
send RESIGN/rsp-req				c1			
send RESIGN/no-rsp-req				z		e1	
send PREPARED							e2
send PREPARED/cancel							
send CONFIRMED/auto							
send CONFIRMED/response							
send CANCELLED			z2		z2		
send HAZARD							
send INF_STATE/active/y		a1	b1				
send INF_STATE/active			b1				
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y					d1		
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd					d1		
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y							
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd							
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y							
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd							
send INF_STATE/unknown							
receive ENROLLED		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
receive RESIGNED				z			
receive PREPARE		d1	d1	c1	d1	e1	e2
receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE		s2	s2	z	d1	s1	s1
receive CONFIRM						f1	f2
receive CANCEL		n1	n1	z	n2	g1	g2
receive CONTRADICTION							
receive SUP_STATE/active/y		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
receive SUP_STATE/active		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						e1	e2
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						e1	e2
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y							
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd							
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y							
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd							
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y							
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known							
receive SUP_STATE/unknown		z	z	z	z	x1	x2
decide to resign			c1		c1		
decide to be prepared			e1		e1		
decide to be prepared/cancel			e2		e2		
decide to confirm autonomously						h1	
decide to cancel autonomously						j1	z1
apply ordered confirmation							
remove persistent information							
detect problem		p1	p1		p1	p2	p2
detect and record problem							
disruption I		z	z	z	z		
disruption II					b1		
disruption III							

Table 13 : Inferior state table – confirm and cancel

	f1	f2	g1	g2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD				
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown	f1 f1	f2 f2	g1 g1	g2 g2
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	f1	f2	g1	g2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown			x1	x2
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	m1 p2	m1 p2	n1 p2	n1 p2
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	e1	e2

Table 14 : inferior state table – autonomous decisions and contradiction

	h1	h2	j1	j2	k1	k2	l1	l2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD	h1		j1		k1		l1	
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown		h2		j2				
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	h1 h1 s3 h2 l1 l2	h2	j1 j1 s4 k1 j2 k2	j2	k1 k2	k2	l1 l2	l2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown	h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 l1		j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j1 j2	j2	k1 k1 k2	k2	l1 l1 l1	
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem		m1		z		z		z
disruption I disruption II disruption III	h1		j1		j1 j1	k1	h1	l1 h1

Table 15 : inferior state table – cancelling and hazard

	m1	n1	n2	p1	p2	q1
send ENROL/rsp-req						
send ENROL/no-rsp-req						
send RESIGN/rsp-req						
send RESIGN/no-rsp-req						
send PREPARED						
send PREPARED/cancel						
send CONFIRMED/auto						
send CONFIRMED/response	z					
send CANCELLED		z2	z2			
send HAZARD				p1	p2	q1
send INF_STATE/active/y						
send INF_STATE/active						
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/unknown						
receive ENROLLED				p1	p2	q1
receive RESIGNED						
receive PREPARE				p1	p2	q1
receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE				s5	s5	s6
receive CONFIRM	m1				p2	q1
receive CANCEL		n1	n2	p1	p2	q1
receive CONTRADICTION				z	z	z
receive SUP_STATE/active/y				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/active				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y					p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd					p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y						
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd						
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y						
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd						
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/unknown		z2	z2	p1	p2	q1
decide to resign						
decide to be prepared						
decide to be prepared/cancel						
decide to confirm autonomously						
decide to cancel autonomously						
apply ordered confirmation						
remove persistent information						
detect problem		p1	p1			
detect and record problem				q1	q1	
disruption I	z	z	z	z		
disruption II		b1	d1			
disruption III			b1			

Table 16 : inferior state table – one phase confirmation

	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			z	z2	z	z
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown						
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	z	z	z	z	z
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	s2		s3 s4			
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	z		z	z	

Table 17 : inferior state table – completing states including queried when completed

	x1	x2	y1	y2	y3	z	z1	z2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD								
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown								
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION			y1	y2	y3	z	z1	z2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown			y1	y2	y3	y1	y2	y3
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem								
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	z	z1	z			z

3778

7 Persistent information

3779 The BTP recovery mechanisms require that information is persisted by the BTP Actors that
3780 perform the Superior and Inferior roles. To ensure consistent application of the outcome, despite
3781 failures, the Inferior must persist some state information at the point of becoming prepared, and
3782 the Superior at the point of making a Confirm decision. If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or
3783 Sub-composer, it must persist information when, as an Inferior, it becomes prepared. The
3784 minimum information to be persisted is the identifiers and addresses of the Peer Inferiors and
3785 Superior – the fact of the persistence being itself an indication of the preparedness or Confirm
3786 decision. However, BTP allows recovery of a Superior:Inferior relationship to occur in other cases
3787 – during the active phase, and before a Confirm decision has been made. Thus, in general, the
3788 BTP Actors will need to persist the current state of the relationships.

3789 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, which may need to be re-sent in
3790 the case of failure (because the first attempt got lost). BTP Actors should be prepared to persist
3791 such qualifiers as well.

3792 A Participant will normally also need to persist some information concerning the application work
3793 whose final or counter effect it is responsible for. The nature of this information is not considered
3794 further in this specification.

3795 Information to be persisted for an Inferior's "decision to be prepared" must be sufficient to re-
3796 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a Confirm decision and to apply a Cancel
3797 decision. It will thus need to include

3798 "superior-address"(as on CONTEXT as updated by REDIRECT)

3799 "superior-identifier" (as on CONTEXT)

3800 "default-is-cancel" value (as on PREPARED)

3801 A Superior must record corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication with
3802 the Inferior. Thus, for each Inferior

3803 "inferior-address" (as on ENROL, as updated by REDIRECT)

3804 "inferior-identifier" (as on ENROL)

3805 In order to recover their own function, both Superior and Inferior will need to persist their own
3806 Identifier ("superior-identifier" and "inferior-identifier") and, depending on the implementation, may
3807 need to persist their original "superior-address" or "inferior-address".

3808 8 XML representation of Message Set

3809 This section describes the syntax for BTP messages in XML. These XML messages represent a
3810 midpoint between the abstract messages and what actually gets sent on the wire.

3811 All URIs for the XML schemas defined by BTP are URLs starting “[http://docs.oasis-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-)
3812 [open.org/business-transaction/business_](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-)
3813 [transaction-btp-1.1-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-)“. (Note that “business” and
3814 “transaction” are joined by a hyphen in the first instances (where it is a directory name on the
3815 OASIS server) and by an underscore in the second (where it is the technical committee name
3816 forming a single part of the document identification). The last part will identify the status of the
3817 document (working draft, committee draft, oasis standard). The schemas will usually be
accessible by dereferencing that URL. (BTP 1.0 used URN-form URIs).

3818 The XML Namespace for the BTP messages is:

3819 [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd)
3820 [transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd)
[05.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd)

3821 In addition to an XML schema, this specification uses an informal syntax to describe the structure
3822 of the BTP messages. The syntax appears as an XML instance, but the values contain data types
3823 instead of values. The following symbols are appended to some of the XML constructs: ? (zero
3824 or one), * (zero or more), + (one or more.) The absence of one of these symbols corresponds to
3825 "one and only one."

3826 The Delivery Parameters are shown in the XML with a darker background.

3827 8.1 Field types

3828 8.1.1 Addresses

3829 As described in the “Abstract Message and Associated Contracts – Addresses” section, a BTP
3830 Address comprises three parts, and for a “target-address” only the “additional information” field is
3831 inside the BTP messages. For all BTP messages whose abstract form includes a “target-address”
3832 parameter, the corresponding XML representation includes a “target-additional-information”
3833 element. This element may be omitted if it would be empty.

3834 For other addresses, all three fields are represent, as in:

```
3835 <btp:some-address priority="...value..."?>  
3836   <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>  
3837   <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific address...</btp:binding-  
3838   address>  
3839   <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing  
3840   information...</btp:additional-information> ?  
3841 </btp:some-address>
```

3842

3843 A "published" address can be a set of <some-address>, which are alternatives which can be
3844 chosen by the Peer (sender.) Multiple addresses are used in two cases: different bindings to
3845 same endpoint, or backup endpoints. In the former, the receiver of the message has the choice of
3846 which address to use (depending on which binding is preferable.) In the case where multiple
3847 addresses are used for redundancy, a priority attribute can be specified to help the receiver
3848 choose among the addresses- the address with the highest priority should be used, other things
3849 being equal. The priority is used as a hint and does not enforce any behaviour in the receiver of
3850 the message. The lower the value, the higher the priority. Default priority is a value of 1.

3851 8.1.2 Qualifiers

3852 The “Qualifier name” is used as the element name, within the namespace of the “Qualifier group”.

3853 Examples:

```
3854 <btqp:inferior-timeout
3855   xmlns:btqp="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
3856 transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd"
3857   xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
3858 transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd"
3859   btp:must-be-understood="false"
3860   btp:to-be-propagated="false">1800</btqp:inferior-timeout>
3861
3862 <auth:username
3863   xmlns:auth="http://www.example.com/ns/auth"
3864   xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
3865 transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd"
3866   btp:must-be-understood="true"
3867   btp:to-be-propagated="true">jtauber</auth:username>
3868
```

3869 Attributes **must-be-understood** has default value “true” and **to-be-propagated** has default value
3870 “false”.

3871 8.1.3 Identifiers

3872 Identifiers shall be URIs.

3873 *Note – Identifiers need to be globally unambiguous. Apart from their generation, the*
3874 *only operation the BTP implementations have to perform on identifiers is to match*
3875 *them.*

3876 8.1.4 Message References

3877 Each BTP message has an optional id attribute to give it a unique identifier. An application can
3878 make use of those identifiers, but no processing is enforced.

3879 8.2 Messages

3880 Element content specified in **bold** is the default when the element is absent.

3881 8.2.1 CONTEXT

```
3882 <btqp:context id?>
3883   <btqp:superior-address priority?> +
3884     ...address...
3885   </btqp:superior-address>
3886   <btqp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btqp:superior-identifier>
3887   <btqp:superior-type>cohesion|atom</btqp:superior-type> ?
3888   <btqp:qualifiers> ?
3889     ...qualifiers...
3890   </btqp:qualifiers>
3891   <btqp:reply-address> ?
3892     ...address...
3893   </btqp:reply-address>
3894 </btqp:context>
```

3895 8.2.2 CONTEXT_REPLY

```
3896 <btqp:context-reply id?>
3897   <btqp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btqp:superior-identifier>
```

```

3898     <btp:completion-
3899 status>completed|incomplete|related|repudiated</btp:completion-status>
3900
3901     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3902     ...qualifiers...
3903     </btp:qualifiers>
3904     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3905     ...additional address information...
3906     </btp:target-additional-information>
3907 </btp:context-reply>

```

3908 8.2.3 REQUEST_STATUS

```

3909 <btp:request-status id?>
3910   <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
3911   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3912   ...qualifiers...
3913   </btp:qualifiers>
3914   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3915   ...additional address information...
3916   </btp:target-additional-information>
3917   <btp:reply-address> ?
3918   ...address...
3919   </btp:reply-address>
3920 </btp:request-status>

```

3921 8.2.4 STATUS

```

3922 <btp:status id?>
3923   <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
3924   <btp:status-value>created|enrolling|active|resigning|
3925     resigned|preparing|prepared|
3926     confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3927     cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3928     hazard|contradicted|unknown|inaccessible</btp:status-value>
3929   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3930   ...qualifiers...
3931   </btp:qualifiers>
3932   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3933   ...additional address information...
3934   </btp:target-additional-information>
3935 </btp:status>

```

3936 8.2.5 FAULT

```

3937 <btp:fault id?>
3938   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
3939   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
3940   <btp:fault-type>...fault type name...</btp:fault-type>
3941   <btp:fault-data>...fault data...</btp:fault-data> ?
3942   <btp:fault-text>...string data ...</btp:fault-text> ?
3943   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3944   ...qualifiers...
3945   </btp:qualifiers>
3946   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3947   ...additional address information...
3948   </btp:target-additional-information>
3949 </btp:fault>

```

3950

3951 The following fault type names are represented by simple strings, corresponding to the entries
3952 defined in the abstract message set:

- 3953 • communication-failure
- 3954 • duplicate-inferior
- 3955 • general
- 3956 • invalid-decider
- 3957 • invalid-inferior
- 3958 • invalid-superior
- 3959 • status-refused
- 3960 • invalid-terminator
- 3961 • unknown-parameter
- 3962 • unknown-transaction
- 3963 • unsupported-qualifier
- 3964 • wrong-state
- 3965 • redirect

3966

3967 Revisions of this specification may add other fault type names, which shall be simple strings of
3968 letters, numbers and hyphens. If other specifications define fault type names to be used with
3969 BTP, the names shall be URIs.

3970 Fault data can take on various forms:

3971 Identifier:

```
3972 <btp:fault-data>...URI...</btp:fault-data>
```

3973

3974 Inferior Identity:

```
3975 <btp:fault-data>  
3976 <btp:inferior-address> +  
3977 ...address...  
3978 </btp:inferior-address>  
3979 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
3980 </btp:fault-data>
```

3981

3982 8.2.6 ENROL

```
3983 <btp:enrol id?>  
3984 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
3985 <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
3986 <btp:inferior-address priority?> +  
3987 ...address...  
3988 </btp:inferior-address>  
3989 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
3990 <btp:qualifiers> ?  
3991 ...qualifiers...  
3992 </btp:qualifiers>  
3993 <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
3994 ...additional address information...  
3995 </btp:target-additional-information>  
3996 <btp:reply-address> ?  
3997 ...address...
```

3998
3999

```
</btp:reply-address>  
</btp:enrol>
```

4000

8.2.7 ENROLLED

4001
4002
4003
4004
4005
4006
4007
4008
4009
4010
4011
4012

```
<btp:enrolled id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:enrolled>
```

4013

8.2.8 RESIGN

4014
4015
4016
4017
4018
4019
4020
4021
4022
4023
4024
4025
4026
4027

```
<btp:resign id?>  
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:resign>
```

4028

8.2.9 RESIGNED

4029
4030
4031
4032
4033
4034
4035
4036
4037
4038
4039
4040

```
<btp:resigned id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:resigned>
```

4041

8.2.10 PREPARE

4042
4043
4044
4045
4046
4047
4048

```
<btp:prepare id?>  
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
```

```
4049     ...additional address information...
4050 </btp:target-additional-information>
4051 <btp:sender-address> ?
4052     ...address...
4053 </btp:sender-address>
4054 </btp:prepare>
```

4055 8.2.11 PREPARED

```
4056 <btp:prepared id?>
4057   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4058   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4059   <btp:default-is-cancel>true|false</btp:default-is-cancel>
4060   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4061     ...qualifiers...
4062 </btp:qualifiers>
4063   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4064     ...additional address information...
4065 </btp:target-additional-information>
4066 <btp:sender-address> ?
4067     ...address...
4068 </btp:sender-address>
4069 </btp:prepared>
```

4070 8.2.12 CONFIRM

```
4071 <btp:confirm id?>
4072   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4073   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4074   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4075     ...qualifiers...
4076 </btp:qualifiers>
4077   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4078     ...additional address information...
4079 </btp:target-additional-information>
4080   <btp:sender-address> ?
4081     ...address...
4082 </btp:sender-address>
4083 </btp:confirm>
```

4084 8.2.13 CONFIRMED

```
4085 <btp:confirmed id?>
4086   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4087   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4088   <btp:confirm-received>true|false</btp:confirm-received>
4089   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4090     ...qualifiers...
4091 </btp:qualifiers>
4092   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4093     ...additional address information...
4094 </btp:target-additional-information>
4095   <btp:sender-address> ?
4096     ...address...
4097 </btp:sender-address>
4098 </btp:confirmed>
```

4099

8.2.14 CANCEL

```
4100 <btp:cancel id?>
4101   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4102   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4103   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4104     ...qualifiers...
4105   </btp:qualifiers>
4106   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4107     ...additional address information...
4108   </btp:target-additional-information>
4109   <btp:sender-address> ?
4110     ...address...
4111   </btp:sender-address>
4112 </btp:cancel>
```

4113

8.2.15 CANCELLED

```
4114 <btp:cancelled id?>
4115   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4116   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
4117   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4118     ...qualifiers...
4119   </btp:qualifiers>
4120   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4121     ...additional address information...
4122   </btp:target-additional-information>
4123   <btp:sender-address> ?
4124     ...address...
4125   </btp:sender-address>
4126 </btp:cancelled>
```

4127

8.2.16 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE

```
4128 <btp:confirm-one-phase id?>
4129   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4130   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4131   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4132     ...qualifiers...
4133   </btp:qualifiers>
4134   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4135     ...additional address information...
4136   </btp:target-additional-information>
4137   <btp:sender-address> ?
4138     ...address...
4139   </btp:sender-address>
4140 </btp:confirm-one-phase>
```

4141

8.2.17 HAZARD

```
4142 <btp:hazard id?>
4143   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4144   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4145   <btp:level>mixed|possible</btp:level>
4146   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4147     ...qualifiers...
4148   </btp:qualifiers>
4149   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4150     ...additional address information...
4151   </btp:target-additional-information>
```

4152
4153
4154
4155

```
<btp:sender-address> ?  
...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:hazard>
```

4156

8.2.18 CONTRADICTION

4157
4158
4159
4160
4161
4162
4163
4164
4165
4166
4167
4168

```
<btp:contradiction id?>  
<btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
<btp:qualifiers> ?  
...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
<btp:target-additional-information> ?  
...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
<btp:sender-address> ?  
...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:contradiction>
```

4169

8.2.19 SUPERIOR_STATE

4170
4171
4172
4173
4174
4175
4176
4177
4178
4179
4180
4181
4182
4183

```
<btp:superior-state id?>  
<btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
<btp:status>active|prepared-received|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>  
<btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
<btp:qualifiers> ?  
...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
<btp:target-additional-information> ?  
...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
<btp:sender-address> ?  
...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:superior-state>
```

4184

8.2.20 INFERIOR_STATE

4185
4186
4187
4188
4189
4190
4191
4192
4193
4194
4195
4196
4197
4198
4199

```
<btp:inferior-state id?>  
<btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
<btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
<btp:status>active|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>  
<btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
<btp:qualifiers> ?  
...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
<btp:target-additional-information> ?  
...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
<btp:sender-address> ?  
...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:inferior-state>
```

4200

8.2.21 REDIRECT

4201
4202

```
<btp:redirect id?>  
<btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
```

```

4203 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4204 <btp:old-address> +
4205   ...address...
4206 </btp:old-address>
4207 <btp:new-address> +
4208   ...address...
4209 </btp:new-address priority?>
4210 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4211   ...qualifiers...
4212 </btp:qualifiers>
4213 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4214   ...additional address information...
4215 </btp:target-additional-information>
4216 </btp:redirect>

```

4217 8.2.22 BEGIN

```

4218 <btp:begin id?>
4219   <btp:transaction-type>cohesion|atom</btp:transaction-type>
4220   <btp:context> .. context content .. </btp:context> ?
4221   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4222     ...qualifiers...
4223 </btp:qualifiers>
4224   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4225     ...additional address information...
4226 </btp:target-additional-information>
4227   <btp:reply-address> ?
4228     ...address...
4229 </btp:reply-address>
4230 </btp:begin>

```

4231 8.2.23 BEGUN

```

4232 <btp:begun id?>
4233   <btp:decider-address priority?> *
4234     ...address...
4235 </btp:decider-address>
4236   <btp:inferior-address priority?> *
4237     ...address...
4238 </btp:inferior-address>
4239   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4240   <btp:context> .. context content .. </btp:context>
4241   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4242     ...qualifiers...
4243 </btp:qualifiers>
4244   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4245     ...additional address information...
4246 </btp:target-additional-information>
4247 </btp:begun>

```

4248 8.2.24 PREPARE_INFERIORS

```

4249 <btp:prepare-inferiors id?>
4250   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4251   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4252     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4253 </btp:inferiors-list>
4254   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4255     ...qualifiers...
4256 </btp:qualifiers>

```

```
4257 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4258   ...additional address information...
4259 </btp:target-additional-information>
4260 <btp:reply-address> ?
4261   ...address...
4262 </btp:reply-address>
4263 </btp:prepare-inferiors>
```

4264 8.2.25 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION

```
4265 <btp:confirm-transaction id?>
4266   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4267   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4268     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4269   </btp:inferiors-list>
4270   <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
4271   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4272     ...qualifiers...
4273 </btp:qualifiers>
4274 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4275   ...additional address information...
4276 </btp:target-additional-information>
4277 <btp:reply-address> ?
4278   ...address...
4279 </btp:reply-address>
4280 </btp:confirm_transaction>
```

4281 8.2.26 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED

```
4282 <btp:transaction-confirmed id?>
4283   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4284   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4285     ...qualifiers...
4286 </btp:qualifiers>
4287   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4288     ...additional address information...
4289 </btp:target-additional-information>
4290 </btp:transaction-confirmed>
```

4291 8.2.27 CANCEL_TRANSACTION

```
4292 <btp:cancel-transaction id?>
4293   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4294   <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
4295   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4296     ...qualifiers...
4297 </btp:qualifiers>
4298   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4299     ...additional address information...
4300 </btp:target-additional-information>
4301   <btp:reply-address> ?
4302     ...address...
4303 </btp:reply-address>
4304 </btp:cancel-transaction>
```

4305 8.2.28 CANCEL_INFERIORS

```
4306 <btp:cancel-inferiors id?>
4307   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
```

```

4308 <btp:inferiors-list>
4309   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4310 </btp:inferiors-list>
4311 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4312   ...qualifiers...
4313 </btp:qualifiers>
4314 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4315   ...additional address information...
4316 </btp:target-additional-information>
4317 <btp:reply-address> ?
4318   ...address...
4319 </btp:reply-address>
4320 </btp:cancel-inferiors>

```

4321 8.2.29 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED

```

4322 <btp:transaction-cancelled id?>
4323   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4324   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4325     ...qualifiers...
4326 </btp:qualifiers>
4327 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4328   ...additional address information...
4329 </btp:target-additional-information>
4330 </btp:transaction-cancelled>

```

4331 8.2.30 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES

```

4332 <btp:request-inferior-statuses id?>
4333   <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
4334   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4335     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4336   </btp:inferiors-list>
4337   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4338     ...qualifiers...
4339 </btp:qualifiers>
4340 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4341   ...additional address information...
4342 </btp:target-additional-information>
4343 <btp:reply-address> ?
4344   ...address...
4345 </btp:reply-address>
4346 </btp:request-inferior-statuses>

```

4347 8.2.31 INFERIOR_STATUSES

```

4348 <btp:inferior-statuses id?>
4349   <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
4350   <btp:status-list>
4351     <btp:status-item> +
4352       <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4353       <btp:status>active|resigned|preparing|prepared|
4354         autonomously-confirmed|autonomously-cancelled|
4355         confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
4356         cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
4357         hazard|invalid</btp:status>
4358     <btp:qualifiers> ?
4359     ...qualifiers...
4360   </btp:status-list>
4361 </btp:inferior-statuses>

```

```
4362 </btp:status-list>
4363 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4364 ...qualifiers...
4365 </btp:qualifiers>
4366 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4367 ...additional address information...
4368 </btp:target-additional-information>
4369 </btp:inferior-statuses>
```

4370 8.3 Standard qualifiers

4371 The informal syntax for these messages assumes the namespace prefix “btpq” is associated with
4372 the URI “[http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd)
4373 [schema-wd-05.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd)”.

4374 8.3.1 Transaction timelimit

```
4375 <btpq:transaction-timelimit>
4376 <btpq:timelimit>
4377 ...time in seconds...
4378 </btpq:timelimit>
4379 </btpq:transaction-timelimit>
```

4380 8.3.2 Inferior timeout

```
4381 <btpq:inferior-timeout>
4382 <btpq:timeout>
4383 ...time in seconds...
4384 </btpq:timeout>
4385 <btpq:intended-decision>confirm|cancel</btpq:intended-decision>
4386 </btpq:inferior-timeout>
```

4387 8.3.3 Minimum inferior timeout

```
4388 <btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
4389 <btpq:minimum-timeout>
4390 ...time in seconds...
4391 </btpq:minimum-timeout>
4392 </btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
```

4393 8.3.4 Inferior name

```
4394 <btpq:inferior-name>
4395 <btpq:inferior-name>
4396 ...string...
4397 </btpq:inferior-name>
4398 </btpq:inferior-name>
```

4399 8.3.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants

```
4400 <btpq:cancel-on-zero-participants>
4401 <btpq:value>
4402 true|false
4403 </btpq:value>
4404 </btpq:cancel-on-zero-participants >
```

4405 8.3.6 Expected-time-till-state-change

```
4406 <btqp:expected-time-till-state-change>  
4407   <btqp:expected-time>  
4408     ...time in seconds...  
4409   </btqp:expected-time>  
4410 </btqp: expected-time-till-state-change >
```

4411 8.4 Compounding of Messages

4412 Relating BTP to one another, in a “group” is represented by containing them within the
4413 btp:related-group element, with the related messages as child elements. The processing for the
4414 group is defined in the section “5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages”. For example

```
4415 <btp:related-group>  
4416   <btp:context-reply>  
4417     ...<completion-status>related</completion-status> ...  
4418   </btp:context-reply>  
4419   <btp:enrol>...</btp:enrol>  
4420   <btp:prepared>...</btp:prepared>  
4421 </btp:related-group>
```

4422 If the rules for the group state that the “target-address” of the abstract message is omitted, the
4423 corresponding target-address-information element shall be absent in the message in the related-
4424 group. The Carrier Protocol binding specifies how a relation between application and BTP
4425 messages is represented.

4426 Bundling (semantically insignificant combination) of BTP messages and related groups is
4427 indicated with the "btp:messages" element, with the bundled messages and related groups as
4428 child elements. For example (confirming one and cancelling another inferiors of a Cohesion):

```
4429 <btp:messages>  
4430   <btp:confirm>...</btp:confirm>  
4431   <btp:cancel>...</btp:cancel>  
4432 </btp:messages>
```

4433

4434 8.5 XML Schemas

4435 8.5.1 XML schema for BTP messages

4436 The XML schema for the BTP messages, with namespace “http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-05.xsd” is available at the same URL.
4437 This file is to be considered as an integral and normative part of this document.
4438

4439 8.5.2 XML schema for standard qualifiers

4440 The XML schema for the standard qualifiers, with namespace http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-05.xsd
4441 available at the same URL. This file is to be considered as a integral and normative part of this
4442 document.
4443

4444

4445

9 Carrier Protocol Bindings

4446

The notion of bindings is introduced to act as the glue between the BTP messages and an underlying transport. A binding specification must define various particulars of how the BTP messages are carried and some aspects of how the related Application Messages are carried. This document specifies two bindings: a SOAP binding and a SOAP + Attachments binding. However, other bindings could be specified by the Oasis BTP technical committee or by a third party. For example, in the future a binding might exist to put a BTP message directly on top of HTTP without the use of SOAP, or a closed community could define their own binding. To ensure that such specifications are complete, the Binding Proforma defines the information that must be included in a binding specification.

4455

A registry of bindings, with links to the binding specifications is maintained on the OASIS website, linked from the BTP page (<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transaction>). Any party may submit a binding specification and request its addition to this registry. The presence of an entry in the registry does not, of itself, imply ratification or approval by OASIS or the BTP Technical Committee.

4456

4457

4458

4459

4460

9.1 Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma

4461

A BTP carrier binding specification should provide the following information:

4462

Binding name

4463

A name for the binding, as used in the “binding name” field of BTP Addresses (and available for declaring the capabilities of an implementation). Binding specified in this document, and future revisions of this document have binding names that are simple strings of letters, numbers and hyphens (and, in particular, do not contain colons). Bindings specified elsewhere shall have binding names that are URIs. Bindings specified in this document use numbers to identify the version of the binding, not the version(s) of the Carrier Protocol.

4464

4465

4466

4467

4468

4469

4470

Binding address format

4471

This section states the format of the “binding address” field of a BTP Address for this binding. For many bindings, this will be a URL of some kind; for other bindings it may be some other form

4472

4473

4474

BTP message representation

4475

This section will define how BTP messages are represented. For many bindings, the BTP message syntax will be as specified in the XML schema defined in this document, and the normal string encoding of that XML will be used.

4476

4477

4478

Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4479

This section will define how BTP messages that are not related to Application Messages are sent in either direction between Superior and Inferior (i.e. those messages sent directly between BTP Actors). This mapping need not be symmetric (i.e. Superior to Inferior may differ to some degree to Inferior to Superior). The mapping may define particular rules for particular BTP messages, or messages with particular parameter values (e.g. the FAULT message with “fault-type” “CommunicationFailure” will typically not be sent as a BTP message). The mapping states any constraints or requirements on which BTP may or must be bundled together by compounding.

4480

4481

4482

4483

4484

4485

4486

4487

Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4488

This section will define how BTP messages that are related to Application Messages are sent. A binding specification may defer details of this to a particular application (e.g. a mapping specification could just say “the CONTEXT may be carried as a parameter of an

4489

4490

4491 application invocation"). Alternatively, the binding may specify a general method that
4492 represents the relationship between application and BTP messages.

4493 **Implicit messages**

4494 This section specifies which BTP messages, if any, are not sent explicitly but are treated
4495 as implicit in carrier-protocol mechanisms, Application Messages or other BTP
4496 messages. This may depend on particular parameter values of the BTP messages or the
4497 Application Messages.

4498 **Faults**

4499 The relationship between the fault and exception reporting mechanisms of the Carrier
4500 Protocol and of BTP shall be defined. This may include definition of which Carrier
4501 Protocol exceptions are equivalent to a FAULT/communication-failure message.

4502 **Relationship to other bindings**

4503 Any relationship to other bindings is defined in this section. If BTP Addresses with
4504 different bindings are be considered to match (for purposes of identifying the Peer
4505 Superior/Inferior and redirection), this should be specified here.

4506 **Limitations on BTP use**

4507 Any limitations on the full range of BTP functionality that are imposed by use of this
4508 binding should be listed. This would include limitations on which messages can be sent,
4509 which event sequences are supported and restrictions on parameter values. Such
4510 limitations may reduce the usefulness of an implementation, but may be appropriate in
4511 certain environments.

4512 **Other**

4513 Other features of the binding, especially any that will potentially affect interoperation,
4514 should be specified here. This may include restrictions or requirements on the use or
4515 support of optional carrier parameters or mechanisms or use of standard or other
4516 qualifiers.

4517 **9.2 Bindings for request/response Carrier Protocols**

4518 BTP does not generally follow a request/response pattern. In particular, on the Outcome
4519 Relationship either side may initiate a message – this is an essential part of the presume-abort
4520 recovery paradigm although it is not limited to recovery cases. However, there are some BTP
4521 messages, especially in the Control Relationship, that do have a request/response pattern. Many
4522 (potential) Carrier Protocols (e.g. HTTP) do have a request/response pattern. The specification of
4523 a binding specification to a request/response Carrier Protocol needs to state what rules apply –
4524 which messages can be carried by requests, which by responses. The simplest rule is to send all
4525 BTP messages on requests, and let the carrier responses travel back empty. This would be
4526 inefficient in use of network resources, and possibly inconvenient when used for the BTP
4527 request/response pairs.

4528 This section defines a set of rules that allow more efficient use of the carrier, while allowing the
4529 initiator of a BTP request/response pair to ensure the BTP response is sent back on the carrier
4530 response. These rules are specified in this section to enable binding specifications to reference
4531 them, without requiring each binding specification to repeat similar information. These rules also
4532 allow the receiver of a message between Superior and Inferior (in either direction) on a Carrier
4533 Protocol request to send any reply message on the carrier response – the “sender-address” field
4534 is implicitly considered to be that of the sender of the carrier request.

4535 A binding to a request/response carrier is not required to use these rules. It may define other
4536 rules.

4537

9.2.1 Request/response exploitation rules

4538

These rules allow implementations to use the request and response of the Carrier Protocol efficiently, and, when a BTP request/response exchange occurs, to either treat the request/response exchanges of the Carrier Protocol and of BTP independently, if both sides wish, or allow either side to map them closely.

4542

Under these rules, an implementation sending a BTP request (i.e. a message, other than CONTEXT, which has “reply-address” as a parameter in the abstract message definition) can ensure that it and the reply map to a carrier request/response by supplying no value for the “reply-address”. An implementation receiving such a request is required to send the BTP response on the carrier response.

4547

Conversely, if an implementation does supply a “reply-address” value on the request, the receiver has the option of sending the BTP response back on the carrier response, or sending it on a new carrier request.

4550

Within the Outcome Relationship, apart from ENROL, there is no “reply-address”, and the parties normally know each other’s “superior-address” and “inferior-address”. However, these messages have a “sender-address”, which is used when the receiver does not have knowledge of the Peer. In this case, the “sender-address” is treated as the “reply-address” of the other messages – if the field is absent in a message on a carrier request, the “sender-address” is implicitly that of the request sender. Any message for the Peer (including the three messages mentioned, but also FAULT and any other valid message in the Superior:Inferior relationship) may be sent on the carrier response. Apart from this, both sides are permitted to treat the carrier request/response exchanges as opportunities for sending messages to the appropriate destination.

4559

The rules:

4560

a) A BTP Actor **may** bundle one or more BTP messages and related groups that have the same binding address for their target in a single `btm:messages` element and transmit this `btm:messages` element on a Carrier Protocol request. There is no restriction on which combinations of messages and groups may be so bundled, other than that they have the same binding address, and that this binding address is usable as the destination of a Carrier Protocol request.

4561

4562

4563

4564

4565

4566

b) A BTP Actor that has received a Carrier Protocol request to which it has not yet responded, and which has one or more BTP messages and groups whose binding address for the target matches the origin of the carrier request **may** bundle such BTP messages in a single `btm:messages` element and transmit that on the Carrier Protocol response.

4567

4568

4569

4570

4571

c) A BTP Actor that has received, on a Carrier Protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that require a BTP response and for which no “reply-address” was supplied, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a `btm:messages` element and transmit this element on the Carrier Protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request.

4572

4573

4574

4575

4576

d) A BTP Actor that has received, on a Carrier Protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that, as abstract messages, have a “sender-address” parameter but no “reply-address” was supplied, and which does not have knowledge of the Peer address, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a `btm:messages` element and transmit this element on the Carrier Protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request. If the Actor does have knowledge of the Peer address it **may** send one or messages for the Peer in the Carrier Protocol response, regardless of whether the binding address of the Peer matches the address of the Carrier Protocol requestor.

4577

4578

4579

4580

4581

4582

4583

4584

4585

e) Where only one message or group is to be sent, it **must** be contained within a `btm:messages` element, as a bundle of one element.

4586

- 4587 f) A BTP Actor that receives a Carrier Protocol request carrying BTP messages that do
4588 have a “reply-address”, or which initiate processing that produces BTP messages whose
4589 target binding address matches the origin of the request, **may** freely choose whether to
4590 use the Carrier Protocol response for the replies, or to send back an “empty Carrier
4591 Protocol response”, and send the BTP replies in a separately initiated Carrier Protocol
4592 request. The characteristics of an “empty Carrier Protocol response” shall be stated in the
4593 particular binding specification.
- 4594 g) A BTP Actor that sends BTP messages on a Carrier Protocol request **must** be able to
4595 accept returning BTP messages on the corresponding Carrier Protocol response and, if
4596 the Actor has offered an address on which it will receive carrier requests, must be able to
4597 accept “replying” BTP messages on a separate Carrier Protocol request.

4598 9.3 SOAP Binding

4599 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the **[SOAP 1.1]**
4600 specification, using the SOAP literal messaging style conventions. If no Application Message is
4601 sent at the same time, the BTP messages are contained within the SOAP Body element. If
4602 Application Messages are sent, the BTP messages are contained in the SOAP Header element.

4603 Binding name

4604 soap-http-1

4605 Binding address format

4606 shall be a URL, of scheme http or https.

4607 BTP message representation

4608 The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML schema defined in this
4609 document shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the SOAP message
4610 without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message); hence the
4611 encodingStyle attribute need not be set or can be set to an empty string.

4612 Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4613 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall be used.

4614 BTP messages sent on an HTTP request or HTTP response which is not carrying an
4615 Application Message, the messages are contained in a single btp:messages element
4616 which is the immediate child element of the SOAP Body element.

4617 An “empty Carrier Protocol response” sent after receiving an HTTP request containing a
4618 btp:messages element in the SOAP Body, when the implementation chooses just to reply
4619 at the lower level (and when the request/response exploitation rules allow an empty
4620 Carrier Protocol response), shall be any of:

- 4621 • an empty HTTP response
- 4622 • an HTTP response containing an empty SOAP Envelope
- 4623 • an HTTP response containing a SOAP Envelope containing a single, empty
4624 btp:messages element.

4625 The receiver (the initial sender of the HTTP request) shall treat these in the same way –
4626 they have no effect on the BTP sequence (other than indicating that the earlier sending
4627 did not cause a communication failure.)

4628 If an Application Message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related
4629 messages shall be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the Application
4630 Message. (There is no ambiguity in whether the BTP messages are related, because
4631 only CONTEXT and ENROL can be related to an Application Message.)

4632 Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4633 All BTP messages sent with an Application Message, whether related to the Application
4634 Message or not, shall be sent in a single btp:messages element in the SOAP Header.
4635 There shall be precisely one btp:messages element in the SOAP Header.

4636 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall apply to the BTP messages carried in the
4637 SOAP Header, as if they had been carried in a SOAP Body, unrelated to an Application
4638 Message, sent to the same binding address.

4639 *Note 1 – The Application Protocol itself (which is using the SOAP Body) may use the*
4640 *SOAP RPC or document approach – this is determined by the application.*

4641 Only CONTEXT and ENROL messages are related (&) to Application Messages. If there
4642 is only one CONTEXT or one ENROL message present in the SOAP Header, it is
4643 assumed to be related to the whole of the Application Message in the SOAP Body. If
4644 there are multiple CONTEXT or ENROL messages, any relation of these BTP messages
4645 shall be indicated by application specific means.

4646 *Note 2 – An Application Protocol could use references to the ID values of the BTP*
4647 *messages to indicate relation between BTP CONTEXT or ENROL messages and the*
4648 *Application Message.*

4649 *Note 3 – However indicated, what the relatedness means, or even whether it has any*
4650 *significance at all, is a matter for the application.*

4651 **Implicit messages**

4652 A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a SOAP request
4653 that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a
4654 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other”
4655 about the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4656 **Faults**

4657 A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as
4658 FAULT/communication-failure.

4659 **Relationship to other bindings**

4660 A BTP Address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding string “soap-http-1” is
4661 considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-http-1” if the
4662 binding address and additional information fields match.

4663 **Limitations on BTP use**

4664 None

4665 **Other**

4666 The SOAP BTP binding does not make use of SOAPAction HTTP header or actor
4667 attribute. The SOAPAction HTTP header is left to be application specific when there are
4668 Application Messages in the SOAP Body, as an already existing web service that is being
4669 upgraded to use BTP might have already made use of SOAPAction. The SOAPAction
4670 HTTP header shall contain no value when the SOAP message carries only BTP
4671 messages in the SOAP Body.

4672 The SOAP mustUnderstand attribute, when used on the btp:messages containing a BTP
4673 CONTEXT, ensures that the receiver (server, as a whole) supports BTP sufficiently to
4674 determine whether any enrolments are necessary and replies with CONTEXT_REPLY as
4675 appropriate. The sender of the CONTEXT (and related Application Message) can use this
4676 to ensure that the application work is performed as part of the Business Transaction,
4677 assuming the receiver’s SOAP implementation supports the mustUnderstand attribute. If
4678 mustUnderstand is false, a receiver can ignore the CONTEXT (if BTP is not supported
4679 there), and no CONTEXT_REPLY will be returned. It is a local option on the sender
4680 (Client) side whether the absence of a CONTEXT_REPLY is assumed to be equivalent to

4681 a CONTEXT_REPLY/ok (and the Business Transaction is allowed to proceed to
4682 confirmation).
4683 *Note – some SOAP implementations may not support the mustUnderstand attribute*
4684 *sufficiently to enforce these requirements.*

4685 9.3.1 Example scenario using SOAP binding

4686 The example below shows an application request with CONTEXT message sent from
4687 client.example.com (which includes the Superior) to services.example.com (Service).

```
4688 <soap:Envelope  
4689   xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
4690   soap:encodingStyle="">  
4691   <soap:Header>  
4692     <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-  
4693 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-  
4694 wd-05.xsd">  
4695       <btp:context>  
4696         <btp:superior-address>  
4697           <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>  
4698           <btp:binding-  
4699 address>http://client.example.com/soaphandler</btp:binding-address>  
4700           <btp:additional-information>btpengine</btp:additional-  
4701 information>  
4702         </btp:superior-address>  
4703         <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-  
4704 identifier>  
4705         <btp:superior-type>atom</btp:superior-type>  
4706         <btp:qualifiers>  
4707           <btpq:transaction-timelimit xmlns:btpq=" http://docs.oasis-  
4708 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-  
4709 schema-wd-  
4710 05.xsd"><btpq:timelimit>1800</btpq:timelimit></btpq:transaction-  
4711 timelimit>  
4712         </btp:qualifiers>  
4713       </btp:context>  
4714     </btp:messages>  
4715   </soap:Header>  
4716   <soap:Body>  
4717     <ns1:orderGoods  
4718   xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">  
4719       <custID>ABC8329045</custID>  
4720       <itemID>224352</itemID>  
4721       <quantity>5</quantity>  
4722     </ns1:orderGoods>  
4723   </soap:Body>  
4724 </soap:Envelope>
```

4725

4726 The example below shows CONTEXT_REPLY and a related ENROL message sent from
4727 services.example.com to client.example.com, in reply to the previous message. There is no
4728 application response, so the BTP messages are in the SOAP Body. The ENROL message does
4729 not contain the target-additional-information, since the grouping rules for CONTEXT_REPLY &
4730 ENROL omit the "target-address" (the receiver of this example remembers the superior address
4731 from the original CONTEXT)

```
4732 <soap:Envelope  
4733   xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
4734   soap:encodingStyle="">  
4735   <soap:Header>  
4736 </soap:Header>  
4737   <soap:Body>
```

```

4738     <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-
4739 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-
4740 wd-05.xsd">
4741     <btp:related-group>
4742     <btp:context-reply>
4743     <btp:target-additional-information>btpeengine</btp:target-
4744 additional-information>
4745     <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-
4746 identifier>
4747     <completion-status>related</completion-status>
4748     </btp:context-reply>
4749     <btp:enrol>
4750     <btp:superior-
4751 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
4752     <btp:response-requested>>false</btp:response-requested>
4753     <btp:inferior-address>
4754     <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4755     <btp:binding-address>
4756     http://services.example.com/soaphandler
4757     </btp:binding-address>
4758     </btp:inferior-address>
4759     <btp:inferior-identifier>
4760     http://example.com/AAAB
4761     </btp:inferior-identifier>
4762     <btp:target-additional-information>btpeengine</btp:target-
4763 additional-information>
4764     </btp:enrol>
4765     </btp:related-group>
4766     </btp:messages>
4767 </soap:Body>
4768 </soap:Envelope>
4769

```

4770 9.4 SOAP + Attachments Binding

4771 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the **[SOAP**
4772 **Attachments]** specification. It is a superset of the Basic SOAP binding, soap-http-1. The two
4773 bindings only differ when Application Messages are sent.

4774 Binding name

4775 soap-attachments-http-1

4776 Binding address format

4777 as for soap-http-1

4778 BTP message representation

4779 As for soap-http-1

4780 Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4781 As for "soap-http-1", except the SOAP Envelope containing the SOAP Body containing
4782 the BTP messages shall be in a MIME body part, as specified in SOAP Messages with
4783 Attachments specification. If an Application Message is being sent at the same time, the
4784 mapping for related messages for this binding shall be used, as if the BTP messages
4785 were related to the Application Message(s).

4786 Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4787 MIME packaging shall be used. One of the MIME multipart/related parts shall contain a
4788 SOAP Envelope, whose SOAP Headers element shall contain precisely one
4789 btp:messages element, containing any BTP messages. Any BTP CONTEXT in the
4790 btp:messages is considered to be related to the Application Message(s) in the SOAP

4791 Body, and to also any of the MIME parts referenced from the SOAP Body (using the
4792 "href" attribute).

4793 **Implicit messages**

4794 As for soap-http-1.

4795 **Faults**

4796 As for soap-http-1.

4797 **Relationship to other bindings**

4798 A BTP Address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding string "soap-http-1" is
4799 considered to match one that has the binding string "soap-attachements-http-1" if the
4800 binding address and additional information fields match.

4801 **Limitations on BTP use**

4802 None

4803 **Other**

4804 As for soap-http-1

4805 **9.4.1 Example using SOAP + Attachments binding**

```
4806 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary; type=text/xml;
4807     start="someID"
4808 --MIME_boundary
4809 Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8
4810 Content-ID: someID
4811 <?xml version='1.0' ?>
4812 <soap:Envelope
4813     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
4814     soap:encodingStyle=" "
4815     <soap:Header
4816         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-
4817 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-
4818 wd-05.xsd">
4819             <btp:context>
4820                 <btp:superior-address>
4821                     <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4822                     <btp:binding-address>
4823                         http://client.example.com/soaphandler
4824                     </btp:binding-address>
4825                     </btp:superior-address>
4826                     <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-
4827 identifier>
4828                     <btp:superior-type>atom</btp:superior-type>
4829                 </btp:context>
4830             </btp:messages>
4831         </soap:Header>
4832         <soap:Body>
4833             <orderGoods href="cid:anotherID"/>
4834         </soap:Body>
4835     </soap:Envelope>
4836 --MIME_boundary
4837 Content-Type: text/xml
4838 Content-ID: anotherID
4839     <ns1:orderGoods
4840 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
4841         <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
4842         <itemID>224352</itemID>
4843         <quantity>5</quantity>
4844     </ns1:orderGoods>
```

4845
4846
4847

--MIME_boundary--

4848 9.5 11.5 WSDL-friendly one-way binding

4849 This binding avoids any compounding, placing one message in each HTTP request. All
4850 messages are transmitted in the same way – the request/response exploitation rules are not
4851 used. This makes it straight-forward to represent the BTP protocol using WSDL, as constrained
4852 by the **[WS-I Basic Profile 1.0]**.

4853 **Binding name**

4854 wsdl-friendly-one-way-1

4855 **Binding address format**

4856 shall be a URL, of type HTTP or HTTPS.

4857 **BTP message representation**

4858 The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML schema referenced by the
4859 BTP 1.1 spec shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the SOAP
4860 message without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message).

4861 *Note -- the `btm:messages` and `btm:related-group` elements are NOT used in this binding.*

4862 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)**

4863 A single BTP message shall be sent as the sole child-element of Body of a SOAP
4864 message sent on an HTTP request. (only). The HTTP response shall be empty or shall
4865 contain an empty SOAP message.

4866 BTP FAULT messages are sent in the same way as other BTP messages, as the sole
4867 child-element of a SOAP Body.

4868 **Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages**

4869 When the association between a BTP CONTEXT, CONTEXT-REPLY or ENROL
4870 message and an Application Message is to be represented by the SOAP layer, the BTP
4871 message shall be an immediate child of the SOAP Header element (i.e. it shall be a
4872 header in its own right). There may be more than one BTP message as a child element of
4873 the SOAP Header element. (The association may be represented by other means, such
4874 as embedding the BTP message in the application message – this would be invisible to
4875 this binding).

4876 A CONTEXT-REPLY message appearing in a SOAP header shall be deemed to be in a
4877 (abstract) related group with any ENROL messages with the same superior-identifier in
4878 the SOAP message.

4879 **Implicit messages**

4880 A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a SOAP request
4881 that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a
4882 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other”
4883 about the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4884 **Faults**

4885 A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as
4886 FAULT/communication-failure.

4887 **Relationship to other bindings**

4888 None

4889 **Limitations on BTP use**

- 4890 Bundling is not supported in this binding – BTP messages that are not semantically
4891 related have to be sent on separate HTTP requests.
- 4892 Related-grouping is not supported in this binding for BTP messages to be sent in the
4893 SOAP Body (i.e. other than in combination with application messages) and only
4894 CONTEXT, CONTEXT-REPLY and ENROL can be related when sent in the header.
- 4895 **Other**
- 4896 An implementation or service may offer this binding in all its roles or could use this
4897 binding on some and other bindings on other roles (e.g this binding as Factory and
4898 Decider, soap-http-1 as Superior and Inferior). It may also use this binding for the
4899 actor:actor relationships and some other binding when sending BTP messages
4900 associated with application messages. In this latter case, the “binding” could be a part of
4901 the application protocol specification and need not be identified as a distinct BTP binding
4902 in any way.
- 4903 WSDL specifications with the target namespaces -
- 4904 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-abstract-wsdl-
wd-05.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-abstract-wsdl-
4905 wd-05.wsdl)
- 4906 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_binding-
wsdl-wd-05.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_binding-
4907 wsdl-wd-05.wsdl)
- 4908 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_services-
wsdl-wd-05.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_services-
4909 wsdl-wd-05.wsdl)
- 4910 - accessible at those URLs, are intended to correspond to this binding. These wsdl documents
4911 form an integral but informative part of this specification. The three documents are:
- 4912 • Abstract WSDL definitions of porttypes corresponding to the roles defined in BTP
- 4913 • SOAP bindings to ports for each of these PortTypes
- 4914 • Partial Service definitions for the combinations of Ports that will typically be combined. They
4915 are partial because they do not include target addresses

4916

10 Conformance

4917 A BTP implementation need not implement all aspects of the protocol to be useful. The level of
4918 conformance of an implementation is defined by which roles it can support using the specified
4919 messages and Carrier Protocol bindings for interoperation with other implementations.

4920 An implementation may implement some roles and relationships in accordance with this
4921 specification, while providing the (approximate) functionality of other roles in some other manner.
4922 (For example, an implementation might provide an equivalent of the Control Relationships using a
4923 language-specific API, but support roles involved in the Outcome Relationships using standard
4924 BTP messages.) Such an implementation is conformant in respect of the roles it does implement
4925 in accordance with this specification.

4926 An implementation can state which aspects of the BTP specification it conforms to in terms of
4927 which Roles it supports. Since most Roles cannot usefully be supported in isolation, the following
4928 Role Groups can be used to describe implementation capabilities:

Role Group	Roles
Initiator/Terminator	Initiator Terminator
Cohesive Hub	Factory Composer (as Decider and Superior) Coordinator (as Decider and Superior) Sub-composer Sub-coordinator
Atomic Hub	Factory Coordinator Sub-coordinator
Cohesive Superior	Composer (as Superior only) Sub-Composer Coordinator (as Superior only) Sub-coordinator
Atomic Superior	Coordinator (as Superior only)) Sub-coordinator
Participant	Inferior Enroller

4929

4930 The Role Groups occupy different positions within a Business Transaction Tree and thus require
4931 presence of implementations supporting other Role Groups:

- 4932 • Initiator/Terminator uses Control Relationship to Atomic Hub or Cohesive Hub to initiate and
4933 control Atoms or Cohesions. Initiator/Terminator would typically be a library linked with
4934 application software.
- 4935 • Atomic Hub and Cohesive Hub would often be standalone servers.

- 4936 • Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior would provide the equivalent of Initiator/Terminator
4937 functionality by internal or proprietary means.
- 4938 • Cohesive Hubs, Atomic Hubs, Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior use Outcome
4939 Relationships to Participants and to each other.
- 4940 • Participants will establish Outcome Relationships to implementations of any of the other Role
4941 Groups except Initiator/Terminator. A Participant “covers” a resource or application work of
4942 some kind. It should be noted that a Participant is unaffected by whether it is enrolled in an
4943 Atom or Cohesion – it gets only a single outcome.

4944 An implementation may support one or more Role Groups. The following combinations are
4945 defined as commonly expected conformance profiles, although other combinations or selections
4946 are equally possible.

Conformance Profile	Role Groups
Participant Only	Participant
Atomic	Atomic Superior Participant
Cohesive	Cohesive Superior Participant
Atomic Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Atomic Hub Participant
Cohesive Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Cohesive Hub Participant

4947

4948 BTP has several features, such as optional parameters, that allow alternative implementation
4949 architectures. Implementations should pay particular attention to avoid assuming their peers have
4950 made the same implementation options as they have (e.g. an implementation that always sends
4951 ENROL with the same inferior address and with the “reply-address” absent (because the Inferior
4952 in all transactions are dealt with by the same addressable entity), must not assume that the same
4953 is true of received ENROLs)

4954

11 References

4955

11.1 Normative

4956

[RFC2119]

S. Bradner, *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.

4957

4958

[SOAP 1.1]

D. Box et al, *Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1*, <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap/>, W3C Note, May 2000

4959

4960

[SOAP Attachments]

J.J.Barton, S. Thatte, H.F.Nielsen, *SOAP Messages with Attachments*, <http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP-attachments>, W3C Note, December 2000

4961

4962

4963

[WS-I Basic Profile 1.0]

K.Ballinger et al, *Basic Profile Version 1.0*, <http://www.ws-i.org/Profiles/BasicProfile-1.0.html>, WS-I, April 2004

4964

4965

4966

Appendix A. Acknowledgments

4967 The following individuals were members of the committee during the development of this
4968 specification. Where members changed their affiliation, their latest affiliation is shown:

- 4969 • Mark Little, Arjuna Technology Ltd.
- 4970 • William Cox, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4971 • Sanjay Dalal, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4972 • Pal Takacs-Nagy, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4973 • Rocky Stewart, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4974 • Sazi Temel, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4975 • Ed Felt, BEA Systems, Inc.
- 4976 • James Tauber, mValent
- 4977 • Tony Fletcher, Choreology Ltd
- 4978 • Peter Furniss, Choreology Ltd
- 4979 • Alastair Green, Choreology Ltd
- 4980 • Bob Haugen, Choreology Ltd
- 4981 • Roddy Herries, Choreology Ltd
- 4982 • Mike Abbott, CodeMetamorphosis
- 4983 • Alex Berson, Entrust, Inc
- 4984 • Victor Corrales, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- 4985 • Savas Parastatidis, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- 4986 • Jim Webber, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- 4987 • Fred Carter, individual (previously Sun Microsystems)
- 4988 • Alex Ceponkus, individual (previously Bowstreet)
- 4989 • Bill Pope, individual (previously Bowstreet)
- 4990 • Gordon Hamilton, individual (previously Applied Theory)
- 4991 • Steve Viens, individual
- 4992 • Mark Hale, Interwoven Inc.
- 4993 • Pyounguk Cho, Iona
- 4994 • Hatem El-Sebaaly, IPNet
- 4995 • Geoff Brown, Oracle
- 4996 • Martin Chapman, Oracle
- 4997 • Anne Manes, Systinet
- 4998 • Alan Davies, SeeBeyond Inc.
- 4999 • Steve White, SeeBeyond Inc.
- 5000 • Doug Bunting, Sun Microsystems
- 5001 • Bill Flood, Sybase
- 5002 • Mark Potts, Talking Blocks

5003

In memory of Ed Felt

5004

Ed Felt of BEA Systems Inc. was an active and highly valued contributor to the work of the
5005 OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee.

5006

His many years of design and implementation experience with the Tuxedo system, WebLogic's
5007 Java transactions, and Weblogic Integration's Conversation Management Protocol were brought
5008 to bear in his comments on and proposals for this specification.

5009

He was killed in the crash of the hijacked United Airlines flight 93 near Pittsburgh,

5010

on 11 September 2001.

5011

5012

Appendix B. Revision History

Rev	Version	Date	By Whom	What
	BTP 1.0	2002-06-03	BT TC	Committee Specification BTP 1.0
wd-01	1.0.9.1	2004-05-05	Peter Furniss	Included all agreed technical changes of that date, change-marked by issue
wd-02	1.0.9.2	2004-08-27	Peter Furniss	Included all agreed technical changes of that date, change-marked by issue
wd-03	1.0.9.3	2004-09-28	Peter Furniss	Previous changes accepted, and new agreed and proposed technical changes applied, up to and including maint-17. XML schemas moved to separate documents
wd-04	1.0.9.4	2004-10-25	Peter Furniss, Bob Haugen	Changed to OASIS template, copying the text in and modifying the non-technical sections; reviewed Part 1 and aligned with agreed changes in Part 2
wd-05	1.0.9.4	2004-11-09	Peter Furniss	Corrected two cells in Table 11, state S1. Applied XML colouring to example sections. Ready for CD vote.

5013

5014

Appendix C. Notices

5015 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights
5016 that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this
5017 document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available;
5018 neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on
5019 OASIS's procedures with respect to rights in OASIS specifications can be found at the OASIS
5020 website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses
5021 to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission
5022 for the use of such proprietary rights by implementors or users of this specification, can be
5023 obtained from the OASIS Executive Director.

5024 OASIS invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent
5025 applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to
5026 implement this specification. Please address the information to the OASIS Executive Director.

5027 Copyright © OASIS Open 2002, 2003, 2004. *All Rights Reserved.*

5028 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works
5029 that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied,
5030 published and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the
5031 above copyright notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works.
5032 However, this document itself does not be modified in any way, such as by removing the
5033 copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing OASIS
5034 specifications, in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the OASIS Intellectual
5035 Property Rights document must be followed, or as required to translate it into languages other
5036 than English.

5037 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its
5038 successors or assigns.

5039 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS
5040 DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO
5041 ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY
5042 RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A
5043 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

5044

Appendix D. Node State Information Serialisation

5045

This Appendix is informational.

5046

This Appendix provides a simple, but standardized, format for the serialised essential state information of a BTP Node. It does not specify the events that would cause serialisation to take place, nor does it specify how this serialisation format is extracted from a BTP Node and transferred elsewhere. The format is specified in abstract form and as an XML Schema.

5047

5048

5049

5050

D.1 Abstract Format for Node State Information

5051

The node state information represents the BTP state information for a single BTP Node in some Transaction Tree. It contains information for a single transaction that was extant at the BTP Node at the time the serialisation was performed.

5052

5053

Parameter	Sub-Parameter	Type
date and time		Date and Time
Role		composer/coordinator/sub-composer/sub-coordinator/participant
own information	transaction type	cohesion/atom
	own-identifier	Identifier
	own-address	Set of BTP Addresses
information as inferior	transaction type	cohesion/atom
	inferior-state-identification	State identifier
	superior's identifier	Identifier
	superior's address	Set of BTP Addresses
	Qualifiers	List of qualifiers
Set of information as superior	superior-state-identification	State identifier
	inferior's identifier	Identifier
	inferior's address	Set of BTP Addresses
	Qualifiers	List of qualifiers

5054

5055

date and time

5056

the date and time that this node state information was generated to an agreed resolution and accuracy. The presence of this information is optional.

5057

5058

role

5059 the type of the BTP Node. Its value is one of composer / coordinator / sub-composer /
5060 sub-coordinator / participant.

5061 **own information**

5062 identification information for this BTP Node. This information is required. It consists of
5063 the following information:

5064 **transaction type**

5065 the type of this part of the transaction propagated to inferiors. Its value is one of
5066 cohesion or atom.

5067 **own identifier**

5068 identifies this BTP Node. This may be the superior identifier from the CONTEXT
5069 for the node and/or the inferior identifier on the ENROL for the node. This shall
5070 be globally unambiguous.

5071 **own address**

5072 the address at which this BTP Node may be accessible. This can be a set of
5073 alternative addresses.

5074 **information as inferior**

5075 information relevant to the BTP Node's Role as an inferior. Should be present, once
5076 only, if the BTP Node is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator or a participant, otherwise
5077 absent. It includes information about the superior of this BTP Node and consists of the
5078 following information:

5079 **transaction type**

5080 the type of this part of the transaction that applies to the BTP Node acting as an
5081 inferior as indicated in the CONTEXT for the BTP Node. Its value is one of
5082 cohesion or atom.

5083 **inferior-state-identification**

5084 identifies the state of the inferior state machine at this BTP Node. This is
5085 represented as a small letter followed by a number, which designates the inferior
5086 state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular Tables 6 and 12 -
5087 17.

5088 **superior's identifier**

5089 identifies the Superior of this BTP Node. This shall be globally unambiguous.

5090 **superior's address**

5091 the address to which ENROL and other messages from this enrolled Inferior were
5092 sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

5093 **qualifiers**

5094 list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this node as an inferior.

5095 **set of information as superior**

5096 information relevant to the node's Role as superior. Should be present, if the BTP Node
5097 is a composer, coordinator, sub-composer, or a sub-coordinator, and shall be absent if
5098 the BTP Node is a participant. It may be present multiple times, once for each inferior
5099 that this BTP Node has a relationship with. It includes information about an inferior of this
5100 node and consists of the following information:

5101 **superior-state-identification**

5102 identifies the state of the superior state machine for this particular inferior. This is
5103 represented as a capital letter followed by a number, which designates the

5104 superior state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular Tables 5
5105 and 7 - 11.

5106 **inferior's identifier**

5107 identifies an Inferior of this BTP Node. This shall be globally unambiguous.

5108 **inferior's address**

5109 the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and SUPERIOR_STATE
5110 messages for this Inferior have been or are to be sent. This can be a set of
5111 alternative addresses.

5112 **qualifiers**

5113 list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this BTP Node as superior to this
5114 inferior.

5115 D.2 Informal XML for Node State Information

```

5116 <btpst:node-information>
5117
5118   <btpst:date-time>2002-05-31T13:20:00.000-05:00</btpst:date-time> ?
5119
5120   <btpst:role>composer|coordinator|sub-composer|
5121     sub-coordinator|participant</btpst:role> ?
5122
5123   <btpst:own-information>
5124     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5125     <btpst:own-identifier>...URI...</btpst:own-identifier>
5126     <btpst:own-address> +
5127       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5128       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5129         address...</btp:binding-address>
5130       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5131         addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5132     </btpst:own-address>
5133   </btpst:own-information>
5134
5135   <btpst:information-as-inferior> ?
5136     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5137     <btpst:I_state>.. statename from inferior state table
5138       e.g. dl..</btpst:I_state>
5139     <btpst:superiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:superiors-identifier>
5140     <btpst:superiors-address> +
5141       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5142       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5143         address...</btp:binding-address>
5144       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5145         addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5146     </btpst:superiors-address>
5147     <btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?
5148   </btpst:information-as-inferior>
5149
5150   <btpst:information-as-superior> +
5151     <btpst:S_state>.. statename from superior state table
5152       e.g. Dl..</btpst:S_state>
5153     <btpst:inferiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:inferiors-identifier>
5154     <btpst:inferiors-address> +
5155       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5156       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5157         address...</btp:binding-address>
5158       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5159         addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?

```

5160
5161
5162
5163
5164

```
</btpst:inferiors-address>  
<btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?  
</btpst:information-as-superior>  
  
</btpst:node-information>
```

5165

D.3 XML schema for Node State Information

5166 The XML schema for the Node State Information, with namespace "[http://docs.oasis-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-05.xsd)
5167 [open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-05.xsd)
5168 [05.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-05.xsd)" is available at same URL. That schema document is to be considered as an integral part
5169 of this informative annex.
5170